

LATIN COMPOSITION

ALLEN AND PHILLIPS



Class PA 2087

Book A 49

Copyright N^o 1912

COPYRIGHT DEPOSIT

LATIN COMPOSITION

BY

BERNARD M. ALLEN

AND

JOHN L. PHILLIPS

INSTRUCTORS IN LATIN IN PHILLIPS ACADEMY
ANDOVER

REVISED EDITION

Boston

ALLYN AND BACON

1912

PA 2087
A49
1912

COPYRIGHT, 1909 AND 1912,
BY BERNARD M. ALLEN
AND JOHN L. PHILLIPS.

#1.00
© CL A320082

PREFACE

LATIN composition in the secondary schools has been taught from two kinds of books, the one based on the text read, the other developing grammar by a systematic treatment. The advantages and defects of both plans are recognized; the present work attempts to combine the two methods in such a way as to preserve the advantages and avoid the defects of each.

In its preparation pains have been taken to emphasize those constructions which by reason of their frequent recurrence are of most importance. This relative importance has been determined by actual tabulation of all constructions in Books I-IV of Caesar's Gallic War, and has served as the basis for fixing the order of presentation in the first part of the book. In many of the current Latin Compositions there is a surprising waste of time on constructions which are seldom met in the secondary school. For instance, to devote a whole lesson to contrary-to-fact conditions in indirect discourse, or to ask the student to write in one exercise more relative clauses of restriction or proviso than he will ever read before going to college, is to betray a lack of a proper sense of perspective.

Experience has shown that pupils are often confused in the attempt to gain from grammar references

an accurate understanding of principles. For this reason, the authors have given in simple language their own statements of grammatical usage, in addition to the usual references to the grammars. In these statements of grammatical usage, clearness and accuracy have been sought rather than originality. Attention may be called, however, to certain points which have been passed over or misstated in other books. Such are the discussion of the dative with compounds in Sections 86-89, where it is noted that verbs compounded with *con* regularly take, instead of the dative, *cum* with the ablative; the translation of *until* in Section 120, where emphasis is laid on the fact that the Latin, at least in preparatory texts, has no use with *dum* or *quoad* corresponding to the use of *until* in English after negative verbs of occurrence, and that in such cases, therefore, *until*, which then is equivalent to *before*, is to be rendered by *priusquam*. Again, the infrequent use of the genitive plural gerundive as compared with the genitive singular, and the entire lack in Caesar of the genitive gerund with an object, unless that object is plural, has been briefly noted in Section 249.

The authors wish to express their appreciation of the valuable suggestions received from Mr. Edwin T. Brewster of Andover and Mr. Eric A. Starbuck of the Westminster School at Simsbury.

BERNARD M. ALLEN.
JOHN L. PHILLIPS.

ANDOVER, July, 1912.

PLAN OF THE BOOK

Part I, prepared for use during the first year of composition work, is based on the first four Books of Caesar, and the constructions are taken up in the order of their frequency in Caesar.

Each lesson is divided into three sets of exercises, marked A, B, and C.

In Exercise A are short sentences illustrating the constructions of the lessons (to be used in connection with the general vocabulary).

In Exercise B are sentences based on Book I, illustrating the constructions of the lesson.

In Exercise C are sentences based on Books II and III, illustrating the same constructions.

If the First Book of Caesar is read first, Exercises A and B may be assigned.

If Book II is read first, Exercises A and C may be assigned.

Every third lesson is a review, and presents connected narrative.

Review exercises, based on Book IV, follow.

The vocabulary has been made to cover these exercises on Book IV, so that they may be used as a part of the composition work of the final year, if desired.

Part II, prepared for use during the second year of composition work, is based on the Orations against Catiline, on Pompey's Command, and on Archias.

The constructions are taken up in the regular systematic order of the Grammars.

All constructions are covered in the lessons based on the Orations against Catiline.

Every third lesson is a review and presents connected discourse.

The exercises based on Pompey's Command and on Archias cover the same constructions, and a passage of connected discourse forms a part of each lesson.

Part II is concluded by review exercises, based on Pompey's Command and on Archias, in which all constructions are reviewed, and connected discourse only is presented.

Part III, prepared for use during the third year of composition work, is based on the Defence of Milo.

It is not expected that these exercises will be used in connection with the study of the text, and a vocabulary has been provided.

Each exercise consists of one section (A) of disconnected sentences and one section (B) of connected narrative.

All constructions are presented and reviewed in these exercises.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

PART I

LESSON	PAGE
I. Pronouns: Personal, Demonstrative, Reflexive	1
II. Pronouns: Relative, Possessive	5
III. Pronouns: Interrogative, Indefinite. Direct Questions. Ablative of Agent	8
IV. Review	12
V. Indirect Questions. Sequence of Tenses	13
VI. Subjunctive of Purpose. Constructions of Place	18
VII. Review	22
VIII. Subjunctive of Result. Ablative of Means. Dative of Possession	23
IX. Indirect Discourse: Simple Statements. Partitive Genitive	26
X. Review	29
XI. Indirect Discourse: Complex Sentences. Prepositions with Ablative	31
XII. Ablative Absolute	35
XIII. Review	38
XIV. Substantive Clauses of Desire, with Verbs of Commanding, Persuading, etc. Ablative of Accompaniment	39
XV. Substantive Clauses of Desire, with Verbs of Asking and Fearing	43
XVI. Review	46

LESSON		PAGE
XVII.	Ablatives of Separation, Comparison, Degree of Difference	48
XVIII.	Substantive Clauses of Result. Ablatives of Manner and Accordance	51
XIX.	Review	54
XX.	Verbs of Hindering, Restraining, Doubting. Time and Space. Dimension	56
XXI.	Dative with Special Verbs. Dative with Compounds	59
XXII.	Review	63
XXIII.	Periphrastic Conjugations. Gerund and Gerundive. Dative of Agent. Expressions of Purpose	65
XXIV.	May, Must, Ought. <i>Licet, oportet, necesse est, dēbeō</i>	71
XXV.	Review	74
XXVI.	Temporal Clauses with <i>cum, ubi, postquam</i> , etc. Ablative with Certain Deponents	76
XXVII.	Temporal Clauses with <i>dum, quoad, priusquam</i> . Ablatives of Cause and Specification	79
XXVIII.	Review	83
XXIX.	Causal Clauses. Dative with Adjectives	85
XXX.	Concessive Clauses. Resumé of <i>Cum</i> Clauses. Genitive with Adjectives	88
XXXI.	Review	91
XXXII.	Subjunctive of Characteristic. Ablative and Genitive of Description	93
XXXIII.	Exhortations. Commands. Wishes. Datives of Purpose and Reference	96
XXXIV.	Conditional Sentences	100
XXXV.	Review	105
EXERCISES	ON BOOK IV	107

PART II

LESSON		PAGE
I.	Agreement of Adjectives, Relative Pronouns, Appositives, Predicate Nouns	116
II.	Pronouns: Personal, Demonstrative, Reflexive, Relative, Possessive, Interrogative, Indefinite	119
III.	Review	121
IV.	Genitive: Subjective, Objective, of Description, of Measure, Partitive, with Adjectives . . .	122
V.	Genitive: with Verbs of Memory, of Feeling, of Judicial Action; with <i>rēfert</i> and <i>interest</i> . . .	125
VI.	Review	128
VII.	Dative: of Indirect Object, with Special Verbs, with Compounds, with Adjectives, of Possession, of Agent, of Reference, of Purpose . .	129
VIII.	Double Accusative: with Verbs of Making and Choosing, with Verbs of Asking and Teaching. Accusative of Extent. Ablatives of Separation, Comparison, Degree of Difference	131
IX.	Review	134
X.	Ablatives of Specification, of Means, with Adjectives and <i>Opus</i> , with Deponents, of Description, of Accompaniment, of Manner, of Cause	135
XI.	Ablative Absolute. Time and Place	137
XII.	Review	138
XIII.	Verbs: Agreement, Voice, Tense, Sequence of Tenses. Direct Questions	139
XIV.	Independent Subjunctives: Exhortations, Commands, Wishes, Deliberative Subjunctive . .	143
XV.	Review	145
XVI.	Subjunctive of Characteristic. Subjunctive of Purpose, Pure and Relative	146
XVII.	Substantive Clauses of Desire, with Verbs of Urging, Commanding, Asking, Fearing	148

LESSON	PAGE
XVIII. Review	150
XIX. Clauses of Result: Pure, Relative, Substantive. Verbs of Hindering, Restraining, Doubting .	151
XX. Temporal Clauses	153
XXI. Review	156
XXII. Conditional Sentences	157
XXIII. Concessions. Provisos. Indirect Questions .	159
XXIV. Review	161
XXV. Indirect Discourse, Regular and Implied. Sub- junctive of Attraction	162
XXVI. Infinitives	166
XXVII. Review	171
XXVIII. Participles. Gerund and Gerundive . .	172
XXIX. Supine. Expressions of Purpose. Order .	176
XXX. Review	180
EXERCISES ON POMPEY'S COMMAND	181
EXERCISES ON ARCHIAS	196
REVIEW EXERCISES ON POMPEY'S COMMAND . . .	201
REVIEW EXERCISES ON ARCHIAS	213

PART III

EXERCISES FOR THE SENIOR YEAR	219
EXAMINATION PAPERS	249
INDEX	262
VOCABULARY	

PART I

LESSON I

PRONOUNS

Personal. — B. 242 ; A. & G. 295 ; H. 500.

Demonstrative. — B. 246-249 ; A. & G. 296-298 ; H. 505-507.

Reflexive. — B. 244 ; A. & G. 299, 300. 1, 2 ; H. 502-504.

Personal Pronouns

1. The Personal Pronouns *ego, I, tū, you*, as subjects of verbs, are regularly not expressed, except for emphasis or clearness.

vēnistī, you came.

tū vēnistī, you came.

2. The Latin has no Personal Pronoun of the third person except *suī*, which is reflexive in its use. The Demonstratives are used to supply this lack.

laudō eum, I praise him.

3. The Genitive of the Personal Pronouns should not be used to express possession. For this purpose Possessives are used. See § 12.

Demonstrative Pronouns

4. The more common Demonstrative Pronouns are *hic*, *this* (near the speaker), *iste*, *that* (remote from the speaker, *that of yours*), and *ille*, *that* (more remote from the speaker, *that of his*).

Is, *that, he*, is less definite in meaning than *ille* or *hic*, and is commonly used as a personal pronoun of the third person.

eum laudō, I praise him.

Is often stands as the antecedent of a relative.

is quem vīdī, he whom I saw.

Reflexive Pronouns

5. A Reflexive Pronoun refers to the subject of the sentence for its meaning.

The reflexive has two uses :

1. Direct Reflexive. This refers for its meaning to the subject of the clause in which it stands.

sē laudat, he praises himself.

2. Indirect Reflexive. This stands in a dependent clause, but refers for its meaning to the subject of the main clause.

Ariovistus respondit sē obsidēs nōn esse dēditūrum, Ariovistus replied that he would not surrender the hostages. (sē refers for its meaning to Ariovistus, the subject of the main verb.)

petivērunt ut pācem sēcum faceret, *they begged that he would make peace with them.* (sē refers for its meaning to the subject of petivērunt.)

6. The indirect use of the reflexive is generally found only in indirect discourse and purpose clauses, when the dependent clause expresses the words or thought of the subject of the main clause.

7. The Reflexive Pronouns of the first and second persons are like the Personal Pronouns.

8. The Reflexive of the third person is *suī*, declined as follows :

SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>nom.</i> —	<i>Same as singular.</i>
<i>gen.</i> suī	
<i>dat.</i> sibi	
<i>acc.</i> sē (sēsē)	
<i>abl.</i> sē (sēsē)	

The following sentences illustrate the direct use of the reflexive :

mē laudō, *I praise myself.*
tē laudās, *you praise yourself.*
sē laudat, *he praises himself.*
nōs laudāmus, *we praise ourselves.*
vōs laudātis, *you praise yourselves.*
sē laudant, *they praise themselves.*

Note that sē (*suī*) is always third person.

9.

EXERCISES

(A vocabulary for the sentences in the exercises marked (A) is at the back of the book. For (B) and (C) consult Latin text.)

(A) 1. We call ourselves friends. 2. This affair was announced to him. 3. They call themselves Gauls. 4. They sent him with the soldiers. 5. The enemy sent envoys to us. 6. We call them barbarians. 7. Caesar led all the troops with him. 8. All the cavalry came with him.

(B) Book I. 1, 2. 1. These tribes often carry on war with them. 2. Aquitania extends from this river to that part of the ocean. 3. We call you Gauls. 4. They call themselves Celts. 5. The Helvetians carry on war with the Germans, and fight in their territory. 6. They all differ from one another. 7. The Belgians inhabit this part of Gaul, and call themselves the bravest of all. 8. Their boundaries are narrow in proportion to the number of men.

(C) Book II. 1. 1. This army will be led against them. 2. All the Belgians are exchanging hostages. 3. The more powerful men will seize the supreme power in that state. 4. Letters of Labienus informed him in regard to these causes. 5. Rumors were brought to us. 6. These were the causes of the conspiracy. 7. They did not wish the Germans to dwell longer with them. 8. They are passing the winter with him.

LESSON II

PRONOUNS — *Continued*

Relative. — B. 250, 251; A. & G. 304-306, 308. *a*; H. 510.

Possessive. — B. 243; A. & G. 302. *a, c, d, e*; H. 501.

Relative Pronouns

10. The Relative Pronoun is *quī, quae, quod, who, which, that*.

The following rule should be carefully noted:

A Relative Pronoun agrees with its Antecedent in *gender* and *number*. Its *case* depends on its construction in the clause in which it stands.

mīles quem vīdit pugnābat, the soldier whom he saw was fighting.

Note that *quem* is in the singular number, masculine gender, to agree with its antecedent *mīles*. It is in the accusative case, object of *vīdit*.

11. The Relative, though sometimes omitted in English, must always be expressed in Latin.

Possessive Pronouns

12. The Possessive Pronouns are *meus, my, tuus, your* (singular), *noster, our, vester, your* (plural), *suus* (reflexive), *his, her, its, their*.

They are declined like adjectives of the first and second declensions, and agree in *gender, number,* and *case* with the nouns they limit. They may be omitted when the sense is clear without them.

13. When the English pronouns *his, her, its, their,* refer to the subject of the verb, the Reflexive **suus** must be used.

Suus has the same direct and indirect use as **sui**. See § 5.

To express *his, her, its, their,* not reflexive in sense, the genitive of **is** is regularly used. In the following sentences, when **suus** is used, it has the direct reflexive use.

suum filium vidit, *he saw his (own) son.*

eiūs filium vidit, *he saw his son (not his own, but some one else's son).*

suōs filiōs vidērunt, *they saw their sons.*

eōrum filiōs vidī, *I saw their sons.*

14.

EXERCISES

(A) 1. They will go out with all their forces. 2. Their soldiers are brave. 3. Our neighbors established peace with us. 4. They sent their leading men, who surrendered to him. 5. The enemy were informed of his arrival. 6. That town, which he captured, was large. 7. After his death, the vetians did the same thing. 8. The envoys, to whom Caesar said these things, were disturbed.

(B) **Book I. 3, 4.** 1. Casticus had been called our friend. 2. He will seize the royal power in his own state. 3. Diviciacus, who held the leadership, was a brother of Dumnorix. 4. They will establish peace with those states which are nearest. 5. They were influenced by his speech, and gave a pledge to one another. 6. His father held the royal power for many years. 7. He will take all his clients with him to the trial. 8. Dumnorix, to whom he gave his daughter in marriage, was very powerful. 9. You attempted the same thing in your state.

(C) **Book II. 2.** 1. He enrolled two legions, which he led into central Gaul. 2. His army arrived in the territory¹ of the Belgians. 3. They are leading all their forces into one place. 4. The legions will come with him into camp. 5. The envoy whom Caesar sent was Quintus Pedius. 6. Our neighbors will find out the things which are being done. 7. He will lead his legions with him into camp. 8. They came to their own territory. 9. He came to their territory.

¹ *in the territory*; in Latin, 'at the borders.'

LESSON III

PRONOUNS — *Continued*

Interrogative. — B. 90; A. & G. 148, 152; H. 511.

Indefinite. — B. 252; A. & G. 309-314; H. 512-515.

Direct Questions. — B. 162; A. & G. 330-333; H. 378.

Ablative of Agent. — B. 216; A. & G. 405; H. 468, and 1.

Interrogative Pronouns

15. The Interrogative Pronoun is *quis*, *quid*. The Interrogative Adjective is generally like the Relative, *quī*, *quae*, *quod*.

quis hoc fēcit? *who did this?*

quid fēcit? *what did he do?*

quod nōmen est clārius? *what name is more famous?*

Indefinite Pronouns

16. The commonest Indefinite Pronouns are *aliquis* and *quis*, *some (one)*, *any (one)*; *quisque*, *each*; and *quīdam*, *certain*.

In *aliquis* and *quis*, the *quis* and *quid* forms are Substantives; *quī* and *quod*, Adjectives.

The nominative feminine singular and the nominative and accusative neuter plural are regularly *qua*, not *quae*.

17. **Quis** is regularly used instead of **aliquis** in clauses introduced by **sī**, **nisi**, **nē**, and in such clauses regularly follows these conjunctions.

sī quid vult, ad mē venīre oportet, *if he wants anything, he should come to me.*

Direct Questions

18. As in English, Direct Questions are of two kinds: those that can be answered by *yes* or *no*, and those that cannot. These may be called Questions of *Fact* and of *Circumstance*. The latter, as in English, are introduced by some question word, such as **quid**, *what?* **cūr**, *why?* **ubi**, *where?*

19. Yes or No Questions are indicated in English only by the inverted order, as *Did you speak?* but in Latin these questions also require a question word. Such questions are of three kinds:

1. Those that expect the answer *no*, introduced by **num**.

num negāre audēs? *dare you deny it?* or *you dare not deny it, do you?*

2. Those that expect the answer *yes*, introduced by **nōnne**.

nōnne sentīs tua cōnsilia patēre? *don't you see that your schemes are manifest?*

3. Those that expect either *yes* or *no*, indicated

by the enclitic *-ne*. This is generally attached to the first word of the question, usually the verb.

potestne hoc fierī? can this be done?

Double Questions

20. The first part of a double question is in Latin regularly introduced by *utrum*, and the second part by *an* or *annōn*.

utrum timor an officium plūs valet? is fear or a sense of duty the stronger?

utrum proelium committere ex ūsū est annōn? is it of advantage to begin battle or not?

Ablative of Personal Agent

21. The Person by Whom a thing is done is expressed by the Ablative with *ab*.

loca superiōra ab exercitū tenēbantur, the higher positions were held by the army.

Note that this construction is confined to Passive verbs, and the Agent corresponds to the Subject of the Active verb. When such a Subject is a *thing*, it becomes, with the Passive verb, the Ablative of Means or Cause. See § 40.

hīs rēbus commōtus est, he was disturbed by these things.

22.

EXERCISES

- (A) 1. What is each lieutenant sending to the army? 2. If any legion comes,¹ I shall see it. 3. Did they not do what² they were ordered to do?

4. The town will be taken by certain soldiers with whom we came. 5. The enemy were frightened by all these things. 6. The Romans were frightened by Ariovistus and the Germans.

¹*comes*. The tense in Latin corresponds to the time referred to. ²*what*. Relative or Interrogative? The Latin prefers the plural.

(B) **Book I.** 5, 6. 1. Were all the towns and villages burned by the Helvetians? 2. Certain¹ of the Rauraci adopted the same plan, and started out with them. 3. If there is any road by which we can² go from home, we will burn all our towns and villages. 4. What did they try to do when³ they went out from home? 5. They cannot persuade their neighbors, can they, to attempt to do this? 6. They permitted them to go through their territory.

¹*certain*. **quidam** and numerals take **ex** with the Ablative instead of the Partitive Genitive. See § 46.

²*can*. Note mood in text. See § 134.

³*when*. Use **ubi**. Note construction in text.

(C) **Book II.** 3, 4. 1. Was the ambassador, Iccius, sent by the Remi? 2. Certain¹ of the Belgians are ready to do Caesar's commands. 3. If any states are in arms, we can join² them. 4. He isn't the only one, is he, who has done³ this? 5. What can twelve thousand men (do) in war? 6. He put himself and all his possessions in⁴ Caesar's power. 7. The Remi and Suessiones have the same laws.

¹*certain*. See note in (B).

³*has done*, § 134.

²*join*. Note usage in text.

⁴*in*; in Latin, '*into*.'

LESSON IV

23.

REVIEW

(B) **Book I. 7, 8.** Lake Geneva empties into the Rhone, which is a river in Gaul between the Sequanians and the Allobroges. Caesar built a wall ten feet high from this lake to the Jura Mountains, which divide the Helvetians from the Sequanians. When this wall was finished, he fortified redoubts; and after stationing¹ garrisons, he was able very easily to stop those who tried to cross over. The Helvetians were intending to march through the province because they could not go by any other route; and so² they fastened many boats together, and made rafts by which they crossed the Rhine at its shallowest point.

¹ *after stationing.* Use Ablative Absolute. ² *and so, itaque.*

(C) **Book II. 5, 6.** Caesar encouraged the Remi, and ordered them to come to the river and to pitch camp there. All this¹ they did promptly; and after they saw that there was² a bridge over this river, they hastened to lead their forces across. Caesar's camp was twelve miles away, and he had fortified it with a rampart eight feet high. The Belgians assaulted this camp, and stripped the rampart of defenders, for no one could stand on the wall when so many stones and weapons were being thrown. Darkness stopped the fighting; and the enemy, who knew that help had been sent, did not delay longer, but retreated.

¹ *this*; in Latin, '*these (things).*' ² *was*, §§ 44, 45.

LESSON V

Indirect Questions. — B. 300; A. & G. 573, 574; H. 649. II.

Sequence of Tenses. — B. 267, 268; A. & G. 482-484; H. 543-545.

Indirect Questions

24. A question not asked directly, but depending on some idea of asking, is called an Indirect Question.

quaesivit quae civitatēs in armīs essent, he asked what states were in arms.

25. This construction is used to include not only a question depending on some verb of asking, but also all dependent expressions introduced by an interrogative word.

intellēxērunt quantam calamitātem intulissent, they knew how great a disaster they had caused.

26. RULE. — The Verb of an Indirect Question is put in the Subjunctive.

27. Double Indirect Questions are introduced by the same particles as Double Direct Questions. See § 20.

intellegere voluit utrum timor an officium plūs valēret, *he wished to know whether fear or a sense of duty was the stronger.*

28. Annōn, *or not*, becomes necne in an indirect question.

dēclārant utrum proelium committere ex ūsū sit necne, *they declare whether it is of advantage to begin battle or not.*

29. With expressions of *trying, hoping, expecting*, a Single Indirect Question may be introduced by sī.

expectāvit sī trānsīrent, *he waited to see whether they would cross.*

Sequence of Tenses

30. Tenses are divided into two classes, Primary and Secondary.

(1) The Primary tenses of the Indicative are those referring to present and future time, the Present, Future, and Future Perfect.

(2) The Secondary tenses of the Indicative are those referring to past time, the Imperfect, Perfect, and Pluperfect.

(3) The Primary tenses of the Subjunctive are the Present and Perfect.

(4) The Secondary tenses of the Subjunctive are the Imperfect and Pluperfect.

31. The tenses of Dependent Subjunctives are determined by the following rule:

Primary tenses of the Indicative are followed by Primary tenses of the Subjunctive, the Present Subjunctive to imply present or future time (*i.e.* incomplete action), and the Perfect Subjunctive to imply past time (*i.e.* completed action), in reference to the main verb.

Secondary tenses of the Indicative are followed by Secondary tenses of the Subjunctive, the Imperfect Subjunctive to imply present or future time (*i.e.* incomplete action), and the Pluperfect Subjunctive to imply past time (*i.e.* completed action), in reference to the main verb.

The whole subject may be condensed into the following statement :

When a Subjunctive depends upon any verb referring to past time, it must be put in the Imperfect or Pluperfect Tense, otherwise, in the Present or Perfect ; the Perfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive refer to time *previous* to that of the principal verb, the Present and Imperfect to the *same* or *later* time.

PRIMARY SEQUENCE

rogat	} quid faciam (incomplete action)	He asks	} what I am doing.
rogābit		He will ask	
rogāverit		He will have asked	
rogat	} quid fēcerim (completed action)	He asks	} what I did, or have done.
rogābit		He will ask	
rogāverit		He will have asked	

SECONDARY SEQUENCE

rogābat	} (incomplete action)	quid facerem	He asked	} what I was doing.
rogāvit			He asked	
rogāverat			He had asked	
rogābat	} (completed action)	quid fēcissem	He asked	} what I had done.
rogāvit			He asked	
rogāverat			He had asked	

TABLE ILLUSTRATING SEQUENCE OF TENSES

Secondary	Primary	MAIN VERB FOLLOWED BY SUBJUNCTIVE	
			Referring to Previous Time
		Referring to the Same or Later Time	
	Present Future Future Perfect	Present	Perfect
	Imperfect Perfect Pluperfect	Imperfect	Pluperfect

32.

EXERCISES

(A) 1. He inquired what they had said. 2. He does not understand what the enemy are doing. 3. We shall soon know why hostages were sent. 4. We cannot find out whether¹ he has gone with the tenth legion alone. 5. They asked why the legions were departing. 6. They do not know whether the camp is in danger or not.

¹ *whether*. Single Indirect Questions of Fact are introduced by either **num** or **-ne**, *whether*, *if*, with no difference in meaning.

(B) **Book I. 9, 10.** 1. He does not understand why they are sending envoys. 2. He announced what¹ the Helvetians were planning. 3. They found out why he had enrolled two legions. 4. Did Caesar know whether Dumnorix was a friend of the Helvetians or not? 5. Caesar knew what¹ was being done by the Helvetians. 6. He does not know whether they obtained their request. 7. Can he find out why they led their legions out from winter quarters? 8. I asked him whether Caesar was passing the winter there, or had gone into Gaul.

¹ *what*, plural.

(C) **Caesar, Book II. 7, 8.** 1. He cannot tell what legions have been led from the camp. 2. He did not understand why two legions had been left in camp. 3. He knows how much space the army occupies. 4. Did Caesar know whether his men were inferior or not? 5. I asked him whether the enemy had burned the towns, or laid waste the fields. 6. I inquired what the smoke indicated. 7. I shall send men to tell¹ him whether the place is suitable. 8. Do you know what engines he placed at the ends of the ditches? 9. He asked who had been sent by the enemy.

¹ *to tell*, § 33.

LESSON VI

Subjunctive of Purpose. — B. 282; A. & G. 531; H. 568, 590.

Constructions of Place. — B. 182, 228, 229, 232; A. & G. 426, 427; H. 418, and 4, 419. 1, 461, 462, 483, 484.

Subjunctive of Purpose

33. Dependent clauses expressing the purpose of the main clause take the Subjunctive; if *positive*, they are introduced by *ut*, or by some form of the relative *quī*, if the sense permits; if *negative*, by *nē*. The tenses follow the rule for sequence of tenses (see § 31). Since a purpose must always refer to the future, the tense must be present or imperfect.

magnō cursū contendērunt ut quam minimum spatī Rōmānīs darētur, they hastened at full speed in order that as little time as possible might be given to the Romans.

Caesar nūntiōs mīsit quī hōs postulārent, Caesar sent messengers to demand these men.

Crassus in Aquītāniam proficīscitur nē auxilia ex hīs nātiōnibus mittantur, Crassus sets out into Aquitania in order that auxiliaries may not be sent from these tribes.

Constructions of Place

34. There are three common constructions of place: Place To Which, Place From Which, and Place At or In Which. All these regularly require a preposition. Place To Which is expressed by the Accusative with **ad** or **in**; Place From Which, by the Ablative with **ab**, **ex**, or **dē**; Place At or In Which, by the Ablative with **in**.

vēnit ad exercitum, *he came to the army.*

exercitum ex castris ēdūxit, *he led the army out of camp.*

bellum in Galliā coortum est, *war arose in Gaul.*

Special Constructions

35. Names of *cities* and *towns*, and **ā-mus**, *home*, and **rūs**, *country*, as distinguished from *city*, do not take a preposition. With these words, Place To Which is expressed by the Accusative; Place From Which, by the Ablative; and Place In or At Which, by the Locative.*

eōs domum remittit, *he sends them back home.*

Tolōsā et Narbōne virīs ēvocātīs, *calling out men from Toulouse and Narbonne.*

domī remanent, *they stay at home.*

*The Locative endings, found only in the first three declensions, are:

ae	ī	ī or e
īs	īs	ibus .

36.

EXERCISES

(A) 1. They delayed in Italy a little while, in order that the cavalry might return home. 2. He sent men from Rome to report this.¹ 3. He will stay at home in order that this may not be done. 4. I went into the country to see him, but he had gone from home. 5. He is retreating into the city in order not to be defeated.

¹ *this*. See § 23. (C) Note 1.

(B) Book I. 11, 12. 1. The Haeduan, in order to defend themselves and their possessions, asked help of¹ Caesar. 2. They sent an army to keep off the attack of the enemy. 3. They had nothing left at home. 4. When the Tigurini had gone out from home, they sent Cassius's army under the yoke. 5. He will cross the river in order to be able to judge in which direction it flows. 6. Caesar inflicted a great disaster on this state, with the design of avenging² his personal wrongs. 7. He will send envoys to Rome to ask help.

¹ *ask of*, *petō*, with *ab* and Ablative.

² *with the design of avenging*; in Latin, '*with this design that he might avenge*.'

(C) Book II. 9, 10. 1. Caesar waited to see what the enemy were doing. 2. The Romans had learned that a large number of horsemen were trying to cross the river. 3. He will send men to find out in what territory fighting is going on.¹ 4. It is best (for) them

all to return home and attack the enemy. 5. They advanced with the design of capturing² the camp. 6. The Remi cut down the bridge in order to cut off our men from supplies. 7. They cannot use home supplies of grain, and the supplies from abroad³ are running short.

¹ *fighting is going on*; in Latin, '*it is being fought.*'

² *with the design of capturing.* See (B) Note 2.

³ *from abroad, aliēnus.*

LESSON VII

37.

REVIEW

(B) **Book I. 13.** Caesar led his army across the Arar, so that he might follow up the forces of the Helvetians. His sudden arrival alarmed them, and they sent envoys to him to make peace, for¹ they could not understand how² he had crossed the river so quickly.³ Divico was the leader of this embassy, and he asked Caesar where he wished the Helvetians to go. He inquired if Caesar remembered the former valor⁴ of the Helvetians, and the destruction of the army which had crossed from the Roman province⁵ into their territory.

¹ *for, nam.* ² *how, quem ad modum.* ³ *quickly, celeriter.*

⁴ *valor.* Note case after **reminiscor** in text.

⁵ *province, prōvincia.*

(C) **Book II. 11, 12.** Caesar sent scouts to find out if the Belgians had gone. At dawn they returned and told him why the forces of the enemy were hurrying home. He sent ahead Cotta and Pedius, his lieutenants, with all the cavalry to delay the rear line, and Titus Labienus followed closely with three legions. They killed a large number of the enemy, and at sunset returned to camp. On the following day he attempted to take the town of Noviodunum, which was in the territory of the Suessiones. These were greatly alarmed, and sent messengers to Caesar to ask for peace.

LESSON VIII

Subjunctive of Result. — B. 284; A. & G. 537; H. 570.

Ablative of Means. — B. 218; A. & G. 409; H. 476.

Dative of Possession. — B. 190; A. & G. 373; H. 430.

Subjunctive of Result

38. A dependent clause of Result is expressed by *ut, that, ut* — *nōn, that* — *not*, and the Subjunctive.

A negative clause of Result may have some other negative than *nōn*, as *nēmō* or *nihil*, if the sense requires. Notice that *nē* is never used with result clauses. What sort of subjunctive clauses are introduced by *nē*?

39. Result clauses are often preceded in the main clause by *tam, so* (regularly used with adverbs and adjectives), *ita, sic, so* (regularly used with verbs), *tantus, so great, such, tālis, of such a kind*.

How is the *tense* of a Result Subjunctive determined? See § 30.

haec urbs ita mūnīta est ut ā Rōmānīs nōn capī posset, this city was so fortified that it could not be taken by the Romans.

tantus erat timor Helvētiōrum ut sē dēderent, such was the fear of the Helvetians that they surrendered.

hostēs tam celeriter accessērunt ut nēmō effugeret, the enemy came on so swiftly that no one escaped.

Ablative of Means

40. The Means or Instrument of an action is expressed by the Ablative without a preposition.

signum tubā datum est, the signal was given by the trumpet.

Dative of Possession

41. The Dative is used with *est*, *sunt*, etc., to denote the Possessor. The thing possessed is the Subject.

eīs erat magna frūmentī cōpia, they had a great abundance of grain.

42.

EXERCISES

(A) 1. Our men fought so bravely that the Helvetians fled. 2. The enemy have such courage that nothing can be done. 3. The town was so fortified by the nature of its situation that no one could approach. 4. Such is the number of the enemy that we cannot drive them back by one attack. 5. The road is so narrow that the army has no means of approach.¹

¹ means of approach, one word.

(B) Book I. 14, 15. 1. They boasted so insolently that Caesar could not put aside the memory of the injuries. 2. Caesar had less doubt because he remembered what the envoys had mentioned. 3. They will march in such a way that we cannot attack them.

4. By this battle he kept the enemy from foraging.
5. The gods had granted prosperity to them for so long that they were grieved at the change of circumstances. 6. The number of the enemy is so large that they cannot drive them back. 7. He stationed men to see in what direction the enemy were marching.

(C) **Book II. 13, 14.** 1. The Bellovaci had endured such insults that they revolted from the Haeduans. 2. They caused so great a disaster that they fled to Britain. 3. He had such courage that he returned to Caesar. 4. By his aid their influence was so increased among the Belgians that the forces of the enemy fled. 5. He approached the town so that they might not pitch their camp there. 6. He has such influence that he can do this.

LESSON IX

Indirect Discourse: Simple Declarative Sentences. — B. 313, 314. 1, 2, 317; A. & G. 579-582, 584; H. 642, 644.

Partitive Genitive. — B. 201. 1, 2; A. & G. 346. *a, c*; H. 440. 5, 441-443. • _____

Indirect Discourse

43. Words or thoughts, when indirectly expressed, *i.e.* not in the exact words of the original, are called Indirect Discourse. This construction is used after verbs and other expressions of *Saying, Thinking, Knowing, and Perceiving.*

44. In Indirect Discourse the principal verb of a statement is in the Infinitive with its subject in the Accusative case.

45. The *tense* of the Infinitive depends on the time referred to in its relation to the time of the verb of Saying, Thinking, etc. The Present Infinitive refers to the *same* time as that of the verb of saying, the Perfect Infinitive to *previous* time, and the Future Infinitive to *later* time.

ūnam esse spem salūtis docent, they show that there is one hope of safety.

certior factus est omnīs discessisse, he was informed that all had departed.

*suōs obsidēs sē recuperātūrōs * exīstimābant, they thought they should recover their hostages.*

Partitive Genitive

46. The Partitive Genitive denotes a whole of which the word it modifies denotes a part. It is also called the Genitive of the Whole.

eōrum ūna pars, one part of them.

minus dubitātiōnis, less (of) hesitation.

After many words, *dē* or *ex* with the Ablative may be used as an equivalent of the Partitive Genitive. This is the regular construction with *quīdam* and cardinal numbers.

quīdam ex hīs, certain of these.

paucī dē nostrīs, a few of our men.

47.

EXERCISES

(A) 1. They said that Caesar would defeat a large part of the forces of the Germans. 2. He does not think he can be captured. 3. They are said¹ to have gone home to their friends. 4. We all knew that he was brave. 5. He informed the soldiers that their general had been killed. 6. We learn that ten of them have returned to Rome from Gaul.

¹ *are said.* This personal passive construction is the same in English and Latin.

* *esse* is generally omitted in the Future Infinitive. A participle helping to form an infinitive must agree with the subject.

(B) **Book I. 16, 17.** 1. Caesar said that the grain in the fields was not ripe. 2. He knew that many of their chiefs had been called together to complain about the leadership of the Haeduans. 3. For this reason, he thought Caesar would take away liberty from the Gauls.¹ 4. Day after day, he declared that the Haeduans were not collecting the grain. 5. They have a large supply of grain, which they can use if Caesar undertakes² the war. 6. He said that he thought we knew with how great danger he had reported our plans.

¹ *Gauls.* Note case in text.

² *undertakes.* What time is referred to?

(C) **Book II. 15, 16.** 1. Certain of the Belgians said they would surrender to the Roman people. 2. He says their valor is so great that they cannot be conquered. 3. When part of the hostages had been handed over, he said he would spare them. 4. They put the merchants and women in one place which the Romans could not reach. 5. When the Haeduans inquired about these matters, they were told that Caesar had gone back home. 6. The Belgians excel in valor, and have¹ great influence. 7. He declares he will not send men to seek peace.

¹ *have;* in Latin '*are of.*'

LESSON X

48.

REVIEW

(B) **Book I. 18.** Caesar realized that Liscus referred to Dumnorix, and that these matters had been discussed very freely and boldly; but because Dumnorix was in charge of the cavalry and was utterly reckless,¹ he wished him to favor the Romans. After dismissing² the council he asked many questions,³ and discovered that for several years he had been enlarging his private property and had very great power both at home and among the Helvetians. Caesar knew that Dumnorix, by means of this power, could restore himself to his former position of influence, and that he had amassed so much⁴ wealth that he entertained hopes of getting the royal power. He learned also that Dumnorix and his horsemen had started the flight of the cavalry a few days before.

¹ *utterly reckless*; in Latin, '*of supreme recklessness.*'

² *after dismissing.* Use Ablative Absolute (§ 55).

³ *questions.* Omit and use neuter adjective as a noun.

⁴ *so much, tantus.*

(C) **Book II. 17, 18.** After learning all this, Caesar picked out certain scouts and centurions to take¹ with him on (his) journey. One of these, as he afterwards learned, noticed how² the legions were marching, and

told the Nervians that it was easy to attack them and plunder the baggage. Since the latter were not at all strong in infantry, they thought they ought not to try³ this plan; but they made hedges by cutting into and bending over young trees so that the march of our army was hindered. There was a river about three feet deep⁴ between the hill and the woods in which the enemy were hiding. The hill had⁵ a gradual slope, and was bare for about one hundred feet from the top.

¹ *take*; in Latin, '*lead*.' See § 33.

² *how*, **quō modō**.

³ *try*, **inēō**.

⁴ *three feet deep*, § 82.

⁵ *had*; in Latin, '*was of*.'

LESSON XI

INDIRECT DISCOURSE

Complex Sentences. — B. 314. 1, 318; A. & G. 580, 585, *a*; H. 643.

49. A Complex Sentence is composed of one main clause and one or more dependent clauses, as *The soldiers whom I see are brave.*

The rules for the verb of the main clause in Indirect Discourse have been given in §§ 44, 45.

50. A Dependent verb in Indirect Discourse is in the Subjunctive.

If either the verb of Saying, Thinking, etc., or the Infinitive of the main clause is past, the tense of the Dependent Subjunctive is Imperfect or Pluperfect (§ 31).

DIRECT

mīlitēs quōs vidēō
fortēs sunt, *the soldiers*
whom I see are brave.

INDIRECT

(a) dīcit mīlitēs quōs
videat fortīs esse, *he says*
that the soldiers whom
he sees are brave.

(b) dīxit mīlitēs quōs
vidēret fortīs esse, *he*
said that the soldiers
whom he saw were brave.

Note that in these expressions the verb in the Dependent Clause of the Direct becomes Subjunctive in the Indirect, and that the Past tense of the verb of saying in (b) requires the Secondary Subjunctive, *diceret*.

51. *Dīcit hostīs oppida quae expugnāvissent incendisse*, *he says that the enemy burned the towns which they (had) captured*.

Note that the Dependent verb of the indirect expression is Pluperfect, with the Perfect Infinitive *incendisse*, although the introducing verb *dīcit* is Present.

52. A Pronoun in any part of a sentence in Indirect Discourse, referring to the subject of the introducing verb of Saying, Thinking, etc., is regularly expressed by the Reflexive.

dīcit sē pācem cum eīs cīvitatibus quae lēgātōs ad sē mīserint factūrum, *he says that he will make peace with those states which sent envoys to him*.

Prepositions with the Ablative

53. The following Prepositions are followed by the Ablative case :

ā, ab, dē, cum, ex, ē, sine, prō, prae. In and sub take the Ablative to express Place At or In Which ; the Accusative to express Place To Which.

54.

EXERCISES

(A) 1. The messengers report that the Belgians are carrying on war with the Germans, who live across the Rhine. 2. Ariovistus replied that he would not return the hostages which had been given to him. 3. Caesar understands that they left the camp so that supplies might be collected. 4. They saw that they would be in great danger if these matters¹ should be reported to him. 5. He knows that those with whom he has established peace will be his friends.

¹ *matters*; in Latin, '*things*.' In all such expressions, where the ending does not show the gender, the word *rēs* should be used.

(B) Book I. 19, 20. 1. He knew that everything¹ which was said to him was true. 2. Caesar hoped that he should not hurt the feelings of Diviciacus, if he should punish his brother. 3. We all know that Procillus was a man in whom² he had great confidence. 4. Diviciacus thought that Caesar would punish Dumnorix because he had led an army through the territory of the Sequanians. 5. He will order Diviciacus to be called to him, so that he may tell him what he knows. 6. Caesar replied that he would tell what had been said in the council.

¹ *everything*; in Latin, '*all things*.'

² *in whom*. Use the Dative.

(C) Book II. 19, 20. 1. Caesar said that because he was approaching the enemy, he would lead six legions in light marching order.¹ 2. He knows that

they will retreat, if he makes² an attack on them. 3. Caesar knew that he could not do everything, because the time was so short.³ 4. He hoped that the soldiers, who had been trained by him in former battles, would not leave the camp. 5. He said that he would give the signal to those who had gone too far.

¹ *in light marching order*, one word.

² *makes*. Use tense of completed action.

³ *the time was so short*; in Latin, ‘*the shortness of time was so great*.’

LESSON XII

ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE

B. 227; A. & G. 419, 420; H. 489.

55. The Ablative of a Noun or Pronoun with a Participle in agreement, but with no grammatical connection with the rest of the sentence, is used to denote an Attendant Circumstance. Two Nouns, or a Noun and an Adjective, are also used in the same way. This construction is called the Ablative Absolute.

The participle is generally the Perfect Participle, sometimes the Present, never the Future. The attendant circumstance may imply *time, cause, concession, condition*, etc., and so be translated by clauses introduced by *when, since, though, if*, etc.

L. Domitiō, Ap. Claudiō cōsulibus* discessit Caesar in Ītaliā, *in the consulship of Lucius Domitius and Appius Claudius, Caesar went off into Italy.*

paucīs dēfendentibus oppidum expugnābit, *if (or since) the defenders are few, he will take the town by storm.*

pauçīs dēfendentibus id expugnāre nōn potuit, *though the defenders were few, he could not take it by storm.*

* This use of the Ablative Absolute shows the regular way of indicating the year.

languidiōribus nostrīs hostēs ācrius īnstābant, *since our men were weaker, the enemy pressed on more boldly.*

56. The ordinary Latin verb has no Perfect Active Participle, and the English Perfect Active Participle is often best translated by the Ablative Absolute.

cōnsiliō convocātō sentiētiās exquīrere coepit, *having summoned a council of war, he began to ask their opinions.*

NOTE. — In translating such a sentence from English to Latin, the construction must be changed from active to passive. Instead of “*having finished the war, he returned,*” say “*the war having been finished, he returned.*”

57. But *Deponent* verbs have this Perfect Active Participle, and this is frequently used, where with other verbs an Ablative Absolute or a Temporal Clause would be necessary.

hī novissimōs adortī et multa mīlia passuum prōsecūtī magnam multitudīnem concīdērunt, *these, having attacked the rear and followed them many miles, killed a large number.*

So Caesar uses *trānsgressus* instead of the Ablative Absolute with *trānsire*.

flūmen trānsgressī (not flūmine trānsitō) proelium commīsērunt, *crossing (lit. having crossed) the river, they began the battle.*

58.

EXERCISES

(Use the Ablative Absolute when possible.)

(A) 1. Leaving the baggage, they hastened to safety. 2. After the hostages were received, they did not fear war. 3. Having crossed the river and set fire to the buildings, they quickly returned. 4. After advancing many miles, he pitched camp. 5. This happened in the consulship of Gnaeus Pompey. 6. When he had learned this, he retreated into Gaul.

(B) **Book I. 21, 22.** 1. Caesar, having sent ahead all his cavalry, ordered Labienus to climb to the summit of the mountain. 2. While our men were seizing this mountain, the Helvetians moved camp. 3. After seizing the mountain, Labienus did not begin battle, but waited for Caesar. 4. Caesar led his forces to the nearest hill, but did not make an attack on the enemy. 5. When they had pitched camp three miles from Caesar's camp, the enemy refrained from battle.

(C) **Book II. 21, 22.** 1. After drawing up the legions and encouraging his men, Caesar began the battle. 2. When they had put on their helmets, they made an attack. 3. So great was the courage of the enemy that there was no time¹ for giving the signal. 4. Having set out for the camp, he saw that weapons were being thrown by our men. 5. He said he could do what² was necessary.³ 6. In order to give the necessary commands, he ran in the other direction.

¹ *there was no time*; in Latin, 'time was lacking.' ² *what*. Relative or Interrogative? ³ *necessary*; in Latin, 'the need.'

LESSON XIII

59.

REVIEW

(B) **Book I. 23, 24.** On the following day it was announced to the enemy that Caesar had changed his course and gone to Bibracte, which was the richest city of the Helvetians, to provide for grain. The Helvetians thought that he was withdrawing because he was frightened, and attacked him in the rear; but Caesar, after leading his forces to the nearest hill and drawing up his line of battle, stationed two legions on the top of the ridge, and collected the packs in ¹ one place. The Helvetians, following with all their baggage, formed a phalanx close by ² the line of battle of the Romans.

¹ *in*; in Latin, '*into*.'

² *close by*, **sub**, and the Ablative.

(C) **Book II. 23, 24.** The soldiers of the ninth and tenth legions, who had taken their stand on the left wing, drove the Atrebatians, with whom they had been fighting, to the river. Having killed a large part of them, they crossed the river and renewed the battle. The Nervians knew that if the Viromandui, who had been fighting with the eighth and eleventh legions, should be put to flight, the camp would be exposed in front and on the left side, and so they hastened to that place. After surrounding the legions on the exposed flank, they continued the battle even to the highest point of the camp. The camp followers, who saw that a part of the enemy had crossed the river and were moving about in our camp, took to flight, some in one direction, others in another.

LESSON XIV

Substantive Clauses of Desire. — B. 294, 295. 1, 2, 296. 1; A. & G. 563; H. 564, 565, 568. 2.

Ablative of Accompaniment. — B. 222; A. & G. 413; H. 473, 474. 2. Note 1.

Substantive Clauses of Desire

60. Clauses of Desire introduced by *ut* or *nē* (never *quī*) are used as the objects of many verbs denoting an action directed toward the future. Some common verbs of this kind are :

moneō, *advise, warn*, with Accusative.

hortor, cohortor, urge, encourage, with Accusative.

persuādeō, persuade, with Dative.

permittō, permit, with Dative.

imperō, command, order, with Dative.

praefectōs cohortātus ut suōs excitārent, having urged the prefects to stir up their men.

huīc persuādet nē ad hostīs trānseat, he persuades this man not to cross over to the enemy.

Equivalent Constructions

61. *Iubeō, order, patior, permit, vetō, forbid*, take the Accusative and Infinitive.

Licet, it is permitted, takes the Dative and Infinitive.

Verbs of Wishing, as *volō, nōlō, mālō, cupiō*, generally take an Infinitive, either Complementary or with Subject Accusative.

permittunt Helvētiīs ut per suōs finīs trānseant,
patiuntur Helvētiōs per suōs finīs trānsire, }
they permit the Helvetians to pass through their
territory.

licet eīs trānsire, they are permitted to cross.

Caesar nōluit agrōs vacāre, Caesar did not wish the
country to be unoccupied.

P. Crassō imperat ut proficīscātur, } *he orders Pub-*
P. Crassum proficīscī iubet, }
lius Crassus to set out.

Ablative of Accompaniment

62. Accompaniment is expressed by the Ablative with *cum*.

cum legiōne VII proximus mare Ōceanum hiemā-
bat, he was wintering near the Atlantic with the
seventh legion.

In a very few phrases (especially *omnibus cōpiīs* and similar expressions), where the noun is modified by an adjective, *cum* is often omitted.

NOTE. — With eight Pronouns *cum* is enclitic :

mēcum, tēcum, sēcum, nōbīscum, vōbīscum, quōcum,
quācum, quibuscum.

63.

EXERCISES

(A) 1. He persuades the citizens to go out of their territories. 2. Caesar had commanded¹ the lieutenants not to leave the camp. 3. Labienus hastened into winter quarters with all his legions. 4. He said he had advised them to take their baggage with them. 5. They did not permit² the Britons to bring help to the Gauls.

¹ *had commanded.* Use both **iubeō** and **imperō**.

² *permit.* Use both **patior** and **permittō**.

(B) **Book I. 25, 26.** 1. They threw away their shields, and fought with the enemy with swords. 2. Caesar ordered the soldiers to make an attack on the Helvetians with drawn swords. 3. Having noticed this, he bade the cavalry surround the enemy and renew the battle. 4. He urges them to retreat to the mountain with their baggage and carts. 5. We persuaded them not to help the soldiers with wagons or anything else. 6. They fought a long time near the baggage, and got possession of the camp and the horses.

(C) **Book II. 25, 26.** 1. When Caesar saw that the tenth legion was hard pressed by the enemy, he ordered them to use their swords. 2. After seizing a weapon and encouraging the soldiers, he bade them spread out the maniples. 3. When this was done,¹ he advised the lieutenants to make an advance² upon the enemy with all their forces. 4. Addressing Baculus by name, he urged him to fight very boldly. 5. Having

captured³ the baggage, he learned what was going on in camp. 6. Their courage being renewed by Caesar's coming, they resisted more bravely.

¹ *when this was done.* Note text.

² *make an advance*; in Latin, '*carry on the standards.*'

³ *captured.* Use **potior**.

LESSON XV

Substantive Clauses of Desire with Verbs of Asking and Fearing. — B. 295. 1, 296. 2; A. & G. 563, 564; H. 565, 567.

Verbs of Asking

64. The following verbs of *asking* continue the list of common verbs which take a Substantive Clause of Desire, introduced by *ut* or *nē*. The construction of the *person asked*, if expressed, follows each verb.

- rogō, *ask*, with Accusative.
petō, *ask, beg*, with *ab* and Ablative.
postulō, *demand*, with *ab* and Ablative.

Remember that the Latin does not use the Infinitive after these verbs or after those in § 60, while in English the Infinitive is often found.

eum rogāvī ut nūntium mitteret, *I asked him to send a messenger.*

ā mē petīvit nē redīrem, *he begged me not to return.*

postulat ut obsidēs reddantur, *he demands that the hostages be given back.*

Verbs of Fearing

65. Verbs or expressions of Fearing are followed by a Subjunctive, introduced by *nē* (translated *that, lest*) or by *ut* (translated *that — not*).

Notice that *ut* and *nē* apparently exchange meanings after verbs of Fearing.

verērī videntur ut habeam satis praesidī, they seem to be afraid that I shall not have guards enough.

timēbat nē militēs superārentur, he feared that the soldiers would be conquered.

66.

EXERCISES

(A) 1. They ask their allies not to surrender.
 2. They feared that the Gauls might be aroused.
 3. He begs them not to return home with their army.
 4. They all fear that aid may not be brought. 5.
 Ariovistus demanded that they come with ten men to the conference. 6. The Helvetians asked their neighbors to exchange hostages. 7. He will beg them to follow with four legions.

(B) Book I. 27, 28. 1. Caesar demanded that they should await his¹ arrival in that place. 2. The Helvetians feared that Caesar would ask that they surrender their arms. 3. They begged Caesar not to regard them as enemies. 4. He will ask that envoys be sent to him. 5. He was afraid that the Ger-

mans might cross into the territory of the Helvetians.

6. Caesar asked the Helvetians to return to their own territory, so that the lands² might not be unoccupied.

7. They urge him to accept their surrender.³ 8.

They fear that they may not be able to conceal their flight.

¹ *his*, indirect reflexive. See § 6.

² *lands*, *agri*.

³ *accept their surrender*. Note text.

(C) Book II. 27, 28. 1. He feared that they might not be able to renew the battle. 2. They begged the cavalry to wipe out the disgrace of flight by their valor. 3. He will demand that they do not cross the river. 4. They fear that these will send envoys to Caesar, and surrender. 5. He asked Caesar to show mercy¹ toward these suppliant people.² 6. The women begged that they might be placed in the swamps with their children. 7. They will request their neighbors to keep (themselves) from doing harm.

¹ *show mercy*. Use *ūtor* and Ablative.

² *suppliant people*. Use adjective only.

LESSON XVI

67.

REVIEW

(B) **Book I. 29, 30.** The soldiers found records in the camp showing¹ the number of Helvetians who could bear arms. These had gone out from home with all the women and children. Caesar ordered his men to make an enumeration of those who had returned home, and the total was about 120,000. The ambassadors of the Gauls, who had come to Caesar, feared that he would inflict punishment on their states, but nevertheless asked him not to take possession of all Gaul. This war had turned out to the advantage of Gaul, and they begged Caesar that they might be permitted to appoint a council, and to ask of him the things which they wished.² This request was granted, and they agreed together not to disclose anything except with Caesar's consent.

¹ *showing*; in Latin, '*which showed*.'

² *wished*. Use Subjunctive, Subordinate Clause in implied Indirect Discourse.

(C) **Book II. 29, 30.** The Aduatuci, after depositing their baggage in a well-fortified town, which had a steep cliff on one side, informed Caesar that they would not make war on him, but would defend themselves with very heavy rocks, which they had placed

on the wall. They had been driven about for many years by the Cimbrians, and were afraid that the Romans would not permit¹ them to choose a place for a home; and so² they urged Caesar to return home with all his forces. Caesar said he would not do this, and having constructed a mound and erected a tower, he was confident that he could defeat the enemy. These were men of great height, and they had fortified their town by a double wall and by numerous redoubts.

¹ *permit*, §§ 60, 61.

² *and so, itaque.*

LESSON XVII

Ablative of Separation or Source. — B. 214, 215; A. & G. 400-402, 403. 1; H. 461-465, 467.

Ablative of Comparison. — B. 217; A. & G. 406, 407. *a*; H. 471.

Ablative of Degree of Difference. — B. 223; A. & G. 414; H. 479.

Ablative of Separation

68. The Ablative, with or without **ab**, **ex**, or more rarely **dē**, is used to express Separation or Source. With words denoting persons a preposition is regularly used.

Note the construction with verbs of asking, § 64.

commeātū nostrōs prohibēbant, *they kept our men from supplies.*

illum ex periculō ēripuit, *he rescued him from peril.*

69. Place From Which regularly requires a preposition, except names of cities and towns, and **domus** and **rūs** (§§ 34, 35).

Ablative of Comparison

70. Comparison may be expressed by **quam**, *than*, with the second of the two words compared in the

same case as the first, but instead of *quam* and the Nominative or Accusative, the Ablative alone may be used.

quam cēterī sunt hūmāniōrēs, } *they are more civil-*
cēterīs sunt hūmāniōrēs, } *ized than the rest.*

Ablative of Degree of Difference

71. Where any *difference* is expressed, usually by a Comparative Adjective or Adverb, the *degree* of the difference is expressed by the Ablative.

paulō sunt cēterīs hūmāniōrēs, *they are a little more civilized than the rest.*

paucīs ante annīs, *a few years before.*

multō ācrius pugnābant, *they fought much more fiercely.*

72.

EXERCISES

(A) 1. The Gauls sought aid from the Germans, who lived across the Rhine. 2. Caesar sent two legions to cut off the enemy from supplies. 3. They thought the Germans were much braver than the Gauls.¹ 4. Ambassadors came from many states to ask him for aid. 5. Many years ago, these men were driven from home and went from Gaul into Italy.

¹ *than the Gauls.* Express in two ways.

(B) **Book I. 31** (*first half*). 1. They asked back their hostages from the Sequanians, and sought aid of

the Roman people. 2. The Germans are much fiercer than the Gauls,¹ and covet their lands. 3. Diviciacus fled from his state, and came to Rome many years before. 4. The Haeduanus are less powerful in Gaul than the Sequanians, being weakened by great disasters. 5. We are working to induce² Diviciacus to give his children as hostages to the Germans. 6. About a thousand of the Germans crossed the Rhine, and contended in arms with the Haeduanus and their dependents.

¹ *than the Gauls.* Express in two ways. ² *to induce,* § 33.

(C) **Book II. 31, 32.** 1. The Belgians were alarmed at this spectacle, and sent envoys to Caesar to ask¹ him for peace. 2. These begged him not to deprive them² of their arms. 3. To this Caesar replied that he would do what he had done three days before. 4. This pile of arms is much higher than that.³ 5. They threw the arms from the wall into the ditch. 6. This ditch was ten feet longer than the wall.

¹ *to ask,* § 33.

² *them,* §§ 5, 6.

³ *than that.* Express in two ways.

LESSON XVIII

Substantive Clauses of Result. — B. 297; A. & G. 568, 569; H. 571.

Ablative of Manner. — B. 220; A. & G. 412; H. 473. 3.

Ablative of Accordance. — B. 220. 3; A. & G. 418. *a*; H. 475. 3.

Substantive Clauses of Result

73. 1. The following common verbs and phrases take a Substantive Clause of Result, used as Subject or Object, introduced by *ut*. The negative is *nōn*. Note that with the clause as *subject*, these verbs are impersonal.

accidit	}	<i>it happens.</i>
fit		
faciō	}	<i>cause, bring about.</i>
efficiō		

accidit ut esset lūna plēna, *it happened that there was a full moon.*

fēcērunt ut cōnsimilis fugae profectiō vidērētur, *they made the departure seem very much like a flight.*

2. Here belongs the phrase *fore* (or *futūrum*) *ut* with the Subjunctive, a construction which is regularly used instead of a Future Passive Infinitive,

and also for the Future Active Infinitive of those verbs which have no Future Active Participle.*

*dixit futūrum utī tōtīus Galliae animī ā sē āverte-
rentur, he said the hearts of all Gaul would be turned
from him.*

Ablative of Manner

74. The Ablative with *cum* is used to denote Manner, and usually answers the question, *how?* When an Adjective or limiting Genitive is used with the Ablative, *cum* is generally omitted.

cum studiō pugnābant, they fought with zeal.

*magnō (cum) studiō pugnābant, they fought with
great zeal.*

Ablative of Accordance

75. That *in accordance with which* anything is, or is done, is expressed by the Ablative, usually without a preposition.

*mōribus suīs pācem petēbant, they begged for peace
according to their custom.*

76.

EXERCISES

(A) 1. It happened that the rest did not dare to make an attack on us. 2. He made it possible¹ that supplies could be brought without danger. 3. The enemy attacked the town with the greatest zeal. 4. It happened that Caesar did not lead the legion in

* With *possum* the Future Infinitive idea is regularly expressed by *posse*.

accordance with his usual custom. 5. He did not cause the infantry to advance with the same speed. 6. He knew they would not be able to commence battle. 7. He said the town would be taken.²

¹ *made it possible, efficiō.*

² *would be taken, §§ 44, 45.*

(B) **Book I. 31** (*last half*). 1. The result was that they could not longer endure his cruelty. 2. He will cause a place to be prepared for the Harudes. 3. He saw that the best part of entire Gaul would be occupied by Ariovistus. 4. All these things were done with the greatest injustice. 5. He says that they will not be able to drive the Germans from the Gallic territory. 6. The cruelty of Ariovistus caused them to seek another home. 7. It happened that a larger number of Germans crossed the Rhine.

(C) **Book II. 33-35.** 1. Caesar caused the gates to be closed and the soldiers to leave the town. 2. It happened that our men did not withdraw their garrison. 3. He knew that no one would be left in the town. 4. They caused a sally to be made with the greatest speed.¹ 5. It happened that the enemy fought bravely² according to their custom. 6. The tribes which dwell across the Rhine will cause envoys to be sent. 7. He knows that every hope will rest in valor alone.

¹ *speed, celeritās.*

² *bravely; in Latin, 'with bravery.'*

LESSON XIX

77.

REVIEW

(B) **Book I. 32, 33.** The lot of the Sequanians was much more unhappy than (that) of the others, because the cruelty of Ariovistus had caused them to fear him in his absence, and they did not dare to seek aid from Caesar.

Therefore¹ when Caesar asked why they did not do what the others did, it happened that they made no answer,² but remained silent. Diviciacus finally told what the reason was. Caesar promised to put an end to the outrages of Ariovistus, and dismissed the council. The Roman province was separated by the Rhine from the territory of the Sequanians, and Caesar thought it would be dangerous to the Roman people (for) the Germans to cross from their own boundaries into Gaul.

¹ *therefore, itaque.*

² *made no answer; in Latin, 'answered nothing.'*

(C) **Book III. 1, 2.** Galba, who had been sent by Caesar to open a road over the Alps, where the merchants were accustomed to go with great danger, fought several successful battles. When envoys had been sent and hostages given, he caused two cohorts to be stationed among the Nantuates, whose territory extended from Lake Geneva to the top of the Alps.

He ordered the Gauls to leave to his cohorts one part of the village of Octodurus, where he had decided to pass the winter himself.

It happened for several reasons that the Gauls decided to renew the war and crush the legion. They knew that two cohorts had been detached to look for provisions, and thought that if they should rush down and hurl their weapons, not even their first attack could be withstood.

LESSON XX

Verbs of Hindering, Restraining, Doubting. — B. 295. 3, 298;
A. & G. 558; H. 568. 8, 595. 1, 2, 596. 2.

Ablative of Time. — B. 230, 231; A. & G. 423; H. 486, 487.

Accusative of Extent. — B. 181; A. & G. 423, 425; H. 417.

Verbs of Hindering, Restraining, Doubting

78. Negative expressions of Hindering, Restraining, and Doubting are followed by *quīn* and the Subjunctive. Such expressions are *nōn retineō*, *I do not restrain*; *nōn dēterreō*, *I do not hinder*; *nōn dubitō*, *I do not doubt*; *nōn dubium est*, *there is no doubt*.

nōn potuērunt retinērī quīn tēla conicerent, *they could not be restrained from throwing weapons*.

nōn dubitāvit quīn Germānī essent fortēs, *he did not doubt that the Germans were brave*.

79. Verbs of Hindering and Restraining, if positive, are regularly followed by *nē* or *quōminus* and the Subjunctive; but *prohibeō*, *prevent*, generally takes the Infinitive.

dēterrui hostīs nē prōgrederentur, *he kept the enemy from advancing.*

Germānōs trānsire prohibēbant, *they prevented the Germans from crossing.*

Ablative of Time

80. Time When or Within Which is expressed by the Ablative without a preposition.

tempore opportūnissimō Caesar auxilium tulit, *Caesar brought help at just the right time.*

ut posterō diē convenirent imperāvit, *he bade them assemble on the following day.*

iter ūnā nocte cōnfectum est, *the march was finished in one night.*

Accusative of Extent

81. Extent of Time and Space is expressed by the Accusative.

paucōs diēs morātus, *having delayed a few days.*

circiter mīlia passuum VII prōgressus, *having advanced about seven miles.*

Absum, *be distant*, takes either the Accusative of Extent or the Ablative of Degree of Difference. See § 71.

82. Dimension is expressed in two ways. *A ditch fifteen feet wide* may be written (*a*) as in English, fossa XV pedēs lāta; (*b*) fossa XV pedum in lātitudinem. Pedēs in (*a*) is an Accusative of Extent; pedum in (*b*) is a Genitive of Measure. (§ 136.)

83.

EXERCISES

(A) 1. The leader cannot restrain his men from attacking the enemy. 2. We tried to keep them from building¹ a bridge. 3. They did not doubt that he had arrived many days before. 4. Caesar prevented part of these forces from crossing the river. 5. He fortified the camp with a rampart twelve feet high.² 6. They said they would give the hostages in a few days. 7. Having delayed fifteen days, he advanced many miles.

¹ *building*; in Latin, '*making*.'

² *twelve feet high*. Express in two ways.

(B) Book I. 34, 35. 1. They could not be restrained from sending envoys to Caesar. 2. In three days he will advance many miles. 3. There was no doubt that these replies had been brought back to Caesar. 4. He talked¹ with him a large part of the day about very important matters. 5. He demanded of him that he prevent a large number from being led across the Rhine. 6. This river was half a mile wide.²

¹ *talked*, *agō*. ² *half a mile wide*. Express in two ways.

(C) Book III. 3, 4. 1. Galba could not be restrained from calling a council and inquiring their opinions. 2. In a short time he will advance ten miles by the same road. 3. There is no doubt that many things have happened unexpectedly. 4. He waited here the larger part of the day to prevent their crossing. 5. The camp was eight miles long.¹ 6. The next day the majority decided to defend the camp.

¹ *eight miles long*. Express in two ways.

LESSON XXI

Dative with Special Verbs. — B. 187. II; A. & G. 367; H. 426.

Dative with Compounds. — B. 187. III; A. & G. 370; H. 429.

Dative with Special Verbs

84. The Dative of the Indirect Object is generally used with verbs meaning *favor, help, please, trust*, and their opposites; *believe, persuade, command, obey, serve, resist, envy, threaten, pardon, spare*.

The following list includes the more common verbs of this class :

crēdō, *believe, trust.*

imperō, *order.*

noceō, *harm.*

parcō, *spare.*

pāreō, *obey.*

persuādeō, *persuade.*

placeō, *please.*

resistō, *resist.*

serviō, *serve.*

studeō, *desire, be eager.*

hīs persuādēre nōn potest, *he cannot persuade them.*

novīs rēbus studēbant, *they desired a revolution.*

hostibus resistēbant, *they resisted the enemy.*

85. These verbs, when used in the Passive, are Impersonal, and the Dative is retained.

eīs persuāsum est, they were persuaded (lit. it was persuaded to them).

Dative with Compounds

86. Many verbs compounded with *ad*, *ante*, *con*, *in*, *inter*, *ob*, *post*, *prae*, *prō*, *sub*, *super*, often take the Dative of the Indirect Object. In this usage the Dative is dependent on the idea contained in the preposition.

exercituī praeerat, he was in command of the army.

hostibus occurrēbat, he met the enemy.

87. If the simple verb is Transitive, the Accusative of the Direct Object may be used, in addition to the Dative of the Indirect Object.

populō Rōmānō bellum intulērunt, they made war on the Roman people.

88. Where the associated word is not dependent on the idea contained in the preposition, these compound verbs take the same construction as the simple verb, *e.g. adhortor, urge, adiuvō, help, cognōscō, learn, cōgō, collect, prohibeō, prevent, prōsequor, follow.* All these take the Accusative.

Exceptions

89. 1. Compounds of **con** regularly take **cum** and the Ablative. The Dative is almost never found in Caesar, rarely in Cicero.

cum omni opere coniunctae, *connected with the whole structure.*

cum Germānis contendunt, *they fight with the Germans.*

2. Many compounds of **ad** and **in**, especially those which imply motion, as **accēdō**, **adeō**, *approach*; **im-mittō**, *send into*; **signa inferō**, *advance (in battle)*, take **ad** or **in** with the Accusative.

3. Some compounds, especially of **ad**, **in**, **ob**, and **sub**, such as **adgredior**, **adorior**, *attack*; **conveniō**, *meet*; **ineō**, *begin, make (a plan)*; **inveniō**, *find*; **obeō**, *reach, attend to*; **oppugnō**, *attack*; **praecēdō**, *surpass*; **subeō**, *undergo*, have become Transitive, and take the Accusative.

90.

EXERCISES

(A) 1. Their leading men¹ persuaded them to make war on the Roman people. 2. The legions resisted the enemy, some in one place, some in another. 3. Our cavalry returned to camp, and met the enemy face to face. 4. Iccius, who was then² in command of the town, sent a message to Caesar. 5. He ordered his men not to throw back weapons against the enemy. 6. They cannot be persuaded to put him in charge of the cavalry.

¹ *leading men*; in Latin, 'leaders.'

² *then*; in Latin, 'at that time.'

(B) **Book I. 36.** 1. The Germans rule those whom they conquer, as they wish. 2. We do not prescribe to you how you shall pay the tax. 3. I shall not make war on their allies unjustly. 4. They could not be persuaded to return the hostages. 5. No one had resisted him without his own destruction. 6. They put him in command¹ of the conquered. 7. He ordered² them not to make the revenues less. 8. He will persuade them to do what he wishes. 9. They had been ordered² to do all these things.

¹ *put in command*, **praeficiō**.

² *ordered*. Use both **imperō** and **iubeō**.

(C) **Book III. 5, 6.** 1. Galba ordered¹ his soldiers to rush from the camp. 2. He came into winter quarters with one² design, and met with another² state of affairs. 3. Not even in the higher places were they able to offer resistance to the enemy. 4. Galba could not be persuaded to tempt fortune too often. 5. A tribune of the soldiers was in charge of the forces which made a sally from the camp. 6. The soldiers were not injured by the weapons which the enemy hurled. 7. Thirty thousand of the barbarians made war on the Roman people.

¹ *ordered*. Use both **imperō** and **iubeō**.

² *one . . . another*, **alius . . . alius**.

LESSON XXII

91.

REVIEW

(B) **Book I. 37, 38.** The Harudes, who had lately come into Gaul, could not be kept from laying waste the lands of the Haeduans. The latter resisted bravely for many days, and did not doubt that Caesar was hurrying by forced marches against the Swabians, commanded by Nasua,¹ in order to prevent them from crossing the Rhine. Caesar thought he ought to advance as quickly as possible to seize Vesontio, and after getting ready a grain supply, he hastened to that town with all his forces. The town is almost surrounded by a river of great width, which touches the base of a mountain sixteen hundred feet high. Caesar fortified this town with a very high wall, so that a great opportunity was given to prolong the war, and having stationed a garrison there, he advanced a three days' march toward Ariovistus.

¹ *commanded by Nasua; in Latin, 'whom Nasua commanded.'*

(C) **Book III. 7, 8.** When the Germans had been conquered, Caesar wished for many reasons to visit Illyricum; but when he had started for that place, he learned that war had begun in Gaul. The reason for

this war was that¹ the Veneti wished to get back the hostages which had been given to Crassus, and did not doubt that, if they should keep the Roman envoys, Crassus would send back these hostages. They agreed with each other that they would do everything by common consent, for they preferred to fight rather than to remain in slavery. The ancestors of the Veneti surpassed all other tribes in naval matters, and possessed most of the harbors of that sea, so that the other states could not resist them.

¹ *that* = *because*.

LESSON XXIII

Gerund and Gerundive. — B. 338, 339; A. & G. 501-507; H. 623-631.

Supine. — B. 340; A. & G. 509; H. 633.

Active Periphrastic Conjugation. — B. 115; A. & G. 193-195, 498. *a*; H. 236, 531.

Passive Periphrastic Conjugation. — B. 115, 337. 7. *b*. 1; A. & G. 193, 194, 196, 500. 2; H. 237, 621. 1, 2.

Dative of Agent. — B. 189. 1; A. & G. 374, *a*; H. 431.

Gerund

92. The Gerund is a Verbal Noun of the second declension, found in the Singular only, in the Genitive, Dative, Accusative, and Ablative cases. It is active in meaning.

eōs spēs praedandī ab labōre revocābat, hope of plundering called them away from their work.

Gerundive

93. The Gerundive is a Verbal Adjective of the first and second declension. It agrees as an adjective with the noun which it limits, in *gender, number, and case*. It is passive in its construction.

signum proelī committendī dedit, *he gave the signal for joining battle* (lit. *of the battle to be joined*).

studium urbis dēfendendae accēdēbat, *zeal for defending the city was added* (lit. *of the city to be defended*).

94. Instead of a Gerund with a Direct Object, the Gerundive construction is regularly used.

ad milītēs cohortandōs, *for encouraging the soldiers*.

Note also the sentences in § 93.

CAUTION. — Do not use the Gerund with a Direct Object.

95. In short expressions, the Genitive and Accusative of the Gerund and Gerundive are often used to express purpose, the Genitive followed by **causā**, the Accusative following **ad**.

praedandī causā ēgressī sunt, *they went out to forage*.

ad Caesarem auxiliī ferendī causā proficīscuntur, *they will set out to bring aid to Caesar*.

ad eōs dēfendendōs convēnērunt, *they came together to defend them*.

Supine

96. The Supine is a Verbal Noun of the fourth declension, found only in the Accusative and Ablative Singular. It is active in meaning. Its most

common use is in the Accusative case, to express purpose after verbs of motion.

veniēbant questum, they came to complain.

Expressions of Purpose

97. Note the following common expressions of purpose, as illustrated in the translation of the sentence, *envoys came to ask peace.*

lēgātī vēnērunt ut pācem peterent (ut with the Subjunctive).

lēgātī vēnērunt quī pācem peterent (quī with the Subjunctive).

lēgātī vēnērunt ad pācem petendam (ad with the Accusative of the Gerundive; the Gerund without an object is similarly used).

lēgātī vēnērunt pācis petendae causā (the Genitive of the Gerundive followed by *causā*; the Gerund without an object is similarly used).

lēgātī vēnērunt pācem petītum (the Accusative of the Supine).

Active Periphrastic Conjugation

98. Futurity or Intention may be expressed by the Active Periphrastic Conjugation, a combination of the Future Active Participle with the verb *sum*.

pugnātūrus erat, he was about to fight, he intended to fight.

nōn est itūrus, he will not go.

Note that the verb is active in meaning, and that the Participle must agree with the Subject in *gender, number,* and *case*.

Passive Periphrastic Conjugation

99. Obligation or Necessity may be expressed by the Passive Periphrastic Conjugation, a combination of the Gerundive with the verb *sum*.

signum	dandum est.	must be given.
	dandum erat. <i>the signal</i>	had to be given.
	dandum erit.	will have to be given.

This use is especially common as an Infinitive of Indirect Discourse.* Note that the verb is passive in meaning, and that the Gerundive must agree with the Subject in *gender, number,* and *case*.

Dative of Agent

100. With the Passive Periphrastic Conjugation, the one on whom the necessity rests is expressed by the Dative case, often called the Dative of Apparent Agent.

Caesarī omnia ūnō tempore agenda erant, *Caesar had to do everything at once.*

sibi exercitum nōn trādūcendum esse exīstimābat, *he thought that he ought not to lead his army across.*

* Out of 182 instances in Caesar, 142 are Infinitives of Indirect Discourse.

101. The English often expresses this idea in active form, as in the sentences above, the agent being used as the subject. To show the Latin idiom, the English active form must be turned into the passive.

English idiom : *we must do this.*

Latin idiom : *this must be done by us.*

Latin : *haec nōbīs facienda sunt.*

102. With Intransitive verbs, the Passive Periphrastic Conjugation *must be used impersonally.*

mātūrāndum sibi exīstimāvit, he thought he ought to hurry.

103.

EXERCISES

(A) 1. He reported to Caesar the reasons for conspiring. 2. Such was the reputation of our soldiers that the enemy sent envoys to ask for peace. 3. Have you come to me for the sake of spying? 4. The Gauls will have to do the same thing which the Helvetians have done. 5. The Gauls are about to do the same thing which the Helvetians have done. 6. Our forces conquered the enemy by fighting with the utmost¹ courage. 7. If they are going to send an army, we must not delay. 8. They sent envoys to Caesar to ask for aid.²

(B) **Book I. 39.** 1. One assigned one reason for departing, another another. 2. He remained in camp

¹ *utmost = greatest.* ² *to ask for aid.* Write in five ways.

for the sake of avoiding suspicion. 3. Caesar intended to delay a few days near Vesontio. 4. Caesar sent some of his men to bring up the grain.¹ 5. We shall have to break camp in a few days. 6. He said that he was going to report this to Caesar. 7. Having signed their wills, they remained in their tents to lament the common danger. 8. The Germans, with whom they were going to contend, had² incredible valor.

¹ *to bring up the grain.* Write in five ways.

² *had;* in Latin, '*were of.*'

(C) **Book III. 9, 10.** 1. They cannot remain long with us for the sake of carrying on the war. 2. Caesar had to hasten to the army as soon as the time of year permitted. 3. The Veneti were informed that the Romans were about to build ships. 4. Caesar will have to distribute his army more widely. 5. The Veneti sent men to bring grain into the town. 6. We must collect as many ships as possible. 7. Envoys came from Britain to ask help.¹ 8. The Romans were not acquainted with² the places where they were going to carry on war.

¹ *to ask help.* Write in five ways.

² *were acquainted with.* Use **cognōscō**. Look out for the tense.

LESSON XXIV

MAY, MIGHT, MUST, OUGHT

May, Might. — B. 327. 1; A. & G. 565. Notes 1, 2; H. 564. 2.

Must, Ought. — B. 115, 270. 2; 337. 7. *b*; A. & G. 194, 196, 486. *a*, 500. 2; H. 237, 618. 2, 621. 1, 2.

May, Might

104. These words may (*a*) merely indicate the Subjunctive mode, as in Purpose clauses, and be so translated, or (*b*) may indicate permission, and be translated by *licet* with the Dative and Infinitive.

ut venīret, in order that he might come.

īre tibi licet, you may go.

Must

105. *Must* is to be translated by *necesse est* and the Infinitive with Subject Accusative, or by the Second Periphrastic Conjugation (§ 99). The latter is much commoner.

<i>necesse est nōs pugnāre</i>	} <i>we must fight.</i>
<i>nōbīs pugnandum est</i>	

Ought

106. *Ought* is to be translated either (a) by the Second Periphrastic Conjugation, (b) by *oportet* and the Infinitive with Subject Accusative, or (c) by *dēbeō* and a Complementary Infinitive.

107. The tense of *dēbeō* and *oportet* indicates the time referred to, and the Infinitive is regularly in the Present tense. In English, on the other hand, *ought* is defective; for the Future, we use the Present; and to express past time, we put the Complementary Infinitive in the Perfect tense.

dēbeō fortiter pugnāre	}	<i>I ought to fight bravely.</i>
oportet mē fortiter pugnāre		
mihi fortiter pugnandum est		
dēbuit obsidēs mittere	}	<i>he ought to have sent hostages.</i>
oportuit eum obsidēs mittere		
obsidēs eī mittendī erant		

108.

EXERCISES

(4) 1. Caesar did this in order that they might not march through the province. 2. Caesar said they might march through the province. 3. The hostages must be returned, and the arms given up. 4. They asked permission¹ to withdraw. 5. This ought² to have been done many years ago. 6. Caesar

ought³ not to have come into Gaul. 7. We ought⁴ not to neglect the injuries of the Haeduans.

¹ *permission*; in Latin, 'that it might be permitted to them.'

² *ought*. Use *oportet*.

³ *ought*. Use *dēbeō*.

⁴ *ought*. Write in three ways.

(B) **Book I. 40 (first half).** 1. Caesar ought¹ to summon to the council the centurions of all ranks. 2. A centurion is not allowed to inquire by what plan he is being led. 3. Caesar said he did this in order that Ariovistus might not reject his friendship. 4. This he should not have said. 5. After learning their plans, you may stay in camp if you wish. 6. The Romans did not need to fear that these unarmed men would conquer them.²

¹ *ought*. Write in three ways. ² *them*, § 5.

(C) **Book III. 11, 12.** 1. He wishes Titus to be near the Treveri, in order that he may prevent them from crossing the river. 2. He says these tribes may unite if they wish. 3. This he should not have said. 4. He did not doubt that they had a large supply of ships. 5. We must defend these places by dikes and ramparts. 6. The difficulty of hindering¹ the attack was very great. 7. He ought² to be put in charge of the fleet.

¹ *hindering the attack*, § 94.

² *ought*. Write in three ways.

LESSON XXV

109.

REVIEW

(B) **Book I. 40** (*last half*). Caesar urged the Roman soldiers not to despair in regard to grain, which was then already ripe in the fields. He told them that they ought not to be disturbed by the narrow roads, and that they were not permitted to dictate to the commander concerning his duties. He desired to know as soon as possible whether the soldiers were going to be¹ obedient to his command or not, and so he ordered them to move camp on the next night. He had the greatest confidence in the tenth legion, and did not² doubt that they would follow³ him,⁴ and do what⁵ had to be done.

¹ *were going to be*, §§ 24-28, 98. ² *and . . . not*, **neque**.

³ *follow*, § 78. ⁴ *him*, § 6.

⁵ *what*; in Latin, '*those things which*.'

(C) **Book III. 13**. The Veneti had to make their ships of oak, so that they might endure any violence whatever. The prows were a little higher than (those) of our ships, and the keels were flat, for it was necessary that they be suited both to great waves and ebbing tides. They had to fasten their anchors with iron cables, and they used¹ leather for

sails, because they thought they ought not to try to manage such heavy ships with (canvas) sails. The places where they were going to carry on war were better suited to the enemy than to the Romans, for the latter² had to dread the winds and the reefs; but the Veneti feared none of these things.

¹ *use, ūtor.* ² *the latter, hī.*

LESSON XXVI

Temporal Clauses with *Ubi, Ut, Postquam, Simul Atque, Cum Primum*. B. 287. 1; A. & G. 543; H. 602.

Temporal Clauses with *Cum*. B. 288. 1, 289; A. & G. 545-547; H. 600, 601.

Ablative with Certain Deponents. B. 218. 1; A. & G. 410; H. 477.

Temporal Clauses with *Ubi*, etc.

110. *Ubi, ut, when, postquam, after, simul atque (ac), cum primum, as soon as*, take the Indicative mood, and, in narrative, the Perfect tense, not the Pluperfect.

ubi ad eōs vēnit, timōrem Rōmānōrum prōposuit, when he came to them, he told of the fear of the Romans.

quod postquam animadvertērunt fierī, salūtem petere contendērunt, after they (had) noticed that this was being done, they hastened to seek safety.

simul atque sē ex fugā recēpērunt, statim lēgātōs mīsērunt, as soon as they recovered from flight, they at once sent envoys.

Temporal Clauses with *Cum*

111. *Cum, when*, in narrative regularly takes the Imperfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive. The

Pluperfect must always be used to express completed action, though the English equivalent often has the simple past tense.

cum paucōrum diērum iter abesset, lēgātī ab eīs vērunt, *when he was distant a few days' journey, envoys came from them.*

eō cum vērisset, ea facta cognōvit, *when he got there, he learned that these things had occurred.*

112. The Subjunctive with *cum* indicates the *circumstances* of the action of the main verb, rather than merely the *time*; this latter use requires the Indicative, and is rarely found in Caesar.

Ablative with *Utor*, etc.

113. The five Deponent verbs, *utor*, *use*, *fruo*, *enjoy*, *fungor*, *perform*, *potior*, *get possession*, *vescor*, *eat*, take the Ablative. *Potior* occasionally takes the Genitive.

iūmentīs importātīs Germānī nōn ūtuntur, *the Germans do not use imported beasts of burden.*

114.

EXERCISES

(4) 1. When¹ this² was heard, they all said he had fought bravely. 2. When³ Caesar was setting out into Italy, he was informed of the war. 3. When⁴ Caesar had begun to fortify the camp, the enemy made an attack on our men. 4. As soon as our men stood on dry land, they put the enemy to flight. 5. They

reported to their state that the enemy had gained possession of the Romans' camp. 6. All who make use of that sea are their friends. 7. After he finished the war, he returned home.

¹ *when.* Use **ubi**.

² *this.* Note the second illustrative sentence in § 110.

³ *when.* Use **cum**.

⁴ *when.* Use both **cum** and **ubi**.

(B) **Book I. 41, 42.** 1. When Caesar had delivered this speech, the military tribunes thanked him. 2. As soon as Ariovistus learned of Caesar's arrival, he promised many things of his own accord. 3. After getting possession of the horses, he put on them his bravest soldiers. 4. When he saw that Ariovistus wished a conference, he decided not to use the Gallic horsemen. 5. As soon as they came, they said that the enemy's forces were twenty miles away.

(C) **Book III. 14.** 1. When Caesar knew that he must wait for the fleet, he decided to capture their towns. 2. After he gained possession of these towns, he set out from the harbor. 3. As soon as our ships were seen by the enemy, Brutus adopted a new plan of battle. 4. Our men used wall hooks with which to cut¹ the ropes of the enemy's vessels. 5. When the flight of the enemy had been checked, he saw that he could not harm them.

¹ *to cut.* Do not use the Infinitive.

LESSON XXVII

Temporal Clauses with *Priusquam*. — B. 291, 292; A. & G. 551; H. 605.

Temporal Clauses with *Dum* and *Quoad*. — B. 293; A. & G. 553-556; H. 603, 604. 1.

Ablative of Specification. — B. 226; A. & G. 418; H. 480.

Ablative of Cause. — B. 219; A. & G. 404; H. 475.

Priusquam

115. *Before* is expressed by *priusquam*, often written *prius . . . quam*. (See example below.) *Priusquam* takes the Indicative when *actual events* are connected.

Present time is expressed by the Present tense, future time by the Present, or Future Perfect, and past time by the Perfect.

nec prius fugere dēstitērunt quam ad flūmen pervēnērunt, *they did not stop retreating until (or before) they came to the river.*

116. *Priusquam* takes the Subjunctive when the temporal clause expresses *anticipation* or *purpose*.

priusquam sē hostēs ex terrōre reciperent, in finīs Suessiōnum exercitum dūxit, *before the enemy should recover from their terror, he led his army into the territory of the Suessiones.*

Dum and Quoad

117. *While* is expressed by **dum** with the Present Indicative (Historical Present), to indicate an act continued in past time.

dum haec in Venetīs geruntur, Sabīnus in finīs Venellōrum pervēnit, *while these things were going on among the Veneti, Sabinus arrived in the territory of the Venelli.*

118. *Until* is expressed by **quoad** with the Indicative, when *actual events* are connected.

ferrum retinuit quoad renūntiātum est vīcisē Boeōtōs, *he kept the weapon (in the wound), until word came that the Boeotians had conquered.*

119. *Until* is expressed by **dum** (less frequently **quoad**) with the Subjunctive, when the temporal clause expresses *anticipation* or *purpose*.

dum reliquae nāvēs eō convenīrent, in ancorīs expectāvit, *he waited at anchor, till the rest of the ships should assemble.*

120. After a Negative Main Clause, *until* is generally equivalent to *before*, and in this sense, should be expressed by **priusquam**. See example in § 115.

Ablative of Specification

121. Specification, indicating *in what respect* anything is true, is expressed by the Ablative without

a preposition. This construction may be used with Nouns, Adjectives, or Verbs.

Helvētiī reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praecēdunt, the Helvetians surpass the rest of the Gauls in valor.

Ablative of Cause

122. Cause is expressed by the Ablative, generally without a preposition.

hīs rēbus fiēbat ut minus lātē vagārentur, because of these things, it happened that they roamed about less widely.

In certain expressions, the prepositions **dē** and **ex** are used.

quā dē causā, for this reason.

ex cōsuētūdine, according to custom.

Cause is also expressed by **propter** or **ob**, *on account of*, followed by the Accusative.

propter multitudinem hostium proeliō supersedēre statuit, on account of the number of the enemy, he decided to refrain from battle.

123.

EXERCISES

(A) 1. Before Caesar set out, he enrolled two new legions. 2. Caesar waited until hostages were brought from the neighboring states. 3. While these things were going on, Caesar left the camp. 4. For this reason the Helvetians thought they surpassed the Romans in courage. 5. They moved camp before more forces should be led against them. 6. A town

of the Remi, Bibrax by name, was eight miles away from this camp. 7. He remained in the province until the envoys should return. 8. The Gauls were alarmed at the speed of the Romans.

(B) **Book I. 43.** 1. Caesar stationed the legion two hundred paces from the mound, before he came to the conference. 2. While he was making war on their allies, a part of the Germans crossed the Rhine. 3. The Haeduans had held the leadership before Ariovistus came into Gaul. 4. They had been able to secure these gifts through his kindness. 5. They did not send back the hostages till¹ he demanded them. 6. They were his allies, and for this reason he made these demands. 7. He waited² until they should seek our friendship.

¹ *till*, § 120.

² *wait*, **exspectō**.

(C) **Book III. 15, 16.** 1. The barbarians hastened to seek safety in flight, before all their ships should be captured. 2. On account of the calm, they could not move from the spot. 3. Caesar decided to fight until the war with the Veneti should be finished. 4. For this reason, Caesar put the senate to death and sold the rest into slavery. 5. The Roman soldiers excelled¹ the Veneti in valor alone. 6. They did not surrender to Caesar until² they had lost all their ships. 7. While the affair was being finished, a few ships reached land.

¹ *excel*, **superō**.

² *until*, § 120.

LESSON XXVIII

124.

REVIEW

(B) **Book I. 44** (*first half*). After Ariovistus was summoned by the Gauls, he crossed the Rhine, and took possession of the settlements which the Gauls had granted him. When they made war upon him, they were routed in one battle, and after being defeated, paid tribute and enjoyed peace. While this was going on, Caesar was marching to attack Ariovistus, and wished to come into Gaul before he¹ should impose tribute on all the states. As soon as he came there, he pitched camp, and waited² until Ariovistus should reply to his demands. The latter³ was ready to fight if Caesar wished to, but Caesar made objections about the tribute, which up to this time had been paid willingly by the Gauls.

¹ *he, ille.*

² *wait, expectō.*

³ *the latter, here ille.*

(C) **Book III. 17.** While Caesar was conquering the Veneti, Sabinus came among the Venelli, from whom large forces had been collected by Viridovix, who was at their head. The Aulerci also, having closed their gates, joined this man, and a large number of Gauls were called out by the hope of plunder. When Viridovix had encamped two miles away, he gave Sabinus

a chance to fight, but he¹ did not think he ought to fight in Caesar's absence, and for this reason was criticised by our soldiers. After many outlaws had collected from all parts of Gaul, they showed a great appearance of courage, but did not dare to approach the rampart of the camp, and so incurred the contempt² of Viridovix, who held the chief command.

¹ *he, ille.* ² *incurred the contempt.* Note text.

LESSON XXIX

Causal Clauses with *Quod, Quia, Quoniam*. — B. 286, 1; A. & G. 540; H. 588.

Causal Clauses with *Cum*. — B. 286. 2; A. & G. 549; H. 598.

Dative with Adjectives. — B. 192; A. & G. 383-385; H. 434.

125. Causal Clauses

Subordinate clauses expressing cause are introduced by *quod, quia, because, and quoniam, since*, which take the Indicative, and by *cum, since*, which takes the Subjunctive.

cum clam trānsīre nōn possent sē revertī simulāvērunt, since they could not cross secretly, they pretended to be returning.

in Īllyricum profectus est quod eās quoque nātiōnēs adīre volēbat, he set out for Illyricum because he wished to visit the tribes there also.

126. The Subjunctive is frequently used with *quod*, rarely with *quia* and *quoniam*, to indicate that the reason is *quoted*; i.e. the sense is that of a Subordinate clause in Indirect Discourse (§ 50).

Caesar questus est quod bellum sine causā intulissent, Caesar complained because (on the ground that) they had made war without cause.

Dative with Adjectives

127. The adjectives *similis*, *like*, *propior*, *proximus*, *nearer*, *nearest*, *idōneus*, *fit*, *ūtilis*, *useful*, *grātus*, *agreeable*, and other words of similar or opposite meaning, regularly take the Dative.

But *similis* may take the Genitive, especially of persons; *propior* and *proximus* may take the Accusative; *idōneus* and *ūtilis* may take the Accusative with *ad*, especially with the Gerund or Gerundive.

Trēverī sunt proximī flūminī Rhēnō, the Treveri are nearest the river Rhine.

locum castrīs idōneum dēlēgit, he picked out a place suitable for a camp.

nactus idōneam ad nāvigandum tempestātem, having obtained suitable weather for sailing.

128.

EXERCISES

(A) 1. The authority of this state is very great, because it has many ships. 2. Since¹ this town was divided by a river, he assigned one part to the Gauls. 3. The Gauls are nearer to the Romans than to the Germans. 4. Since² the Haeduans had been conquered, they were made tributary. 5. He bitterly accused them because he was not aided by them. 6. This place was suitable for drawing up a line of battle.

¹ *Since*. Use *cum*.

² *Since*. Write in two ways.

(B) **Book I. 44** (*last half*). 1. He withdrew his army into those regions, because they were nearest the province (of) Gaul. 2. Since the Haeduans had been called brothers by the senate, they ought to have enjoyed the assistance of the Romans. 3. Ariovistus complained because we had made an attack on his territories. 4. The friendship of the Roman people was pleasing to the Haeduans, since they did not wish to be overwhelmed. 5. Since he has withdrawn from Gaul, we shall consider him as a friend, and not as an enemy.

(C) **Book III. 18**. 1. He picked out a Gaul, because he thought he was suitable for this purpose.¹ 2. Since he could not persuade him with promises, he gave him rewards. 3. These rewards were very pleasing to him, and he went over to the enemy as a deserter. 4. He showed them that Caesar was hard pressed by the Veneti, because help could not be brought. 5. Since the chance of defeating Sabinus ought not to be lost, they hasten to the camp and fill up the ditches.

¹ *purpose, rēs.*

LESSON XXX

Concessive Clauses. — B. 308, 309. 2, 3; A. & G. 527, 549; H. 585, 586, 598.

Genitive with Adjectives. — B. 204. 1; A. & G. 349. *a*; H. 450, 451.

Concessive Clauses

129. *Although*, with a clause of Concession, may be expressed by **cum** with the Subjunctive; by **etsi** with the constructions of Conditional Sentences (cf. §§ 143–148); by **quamquam** with the Indicative. **Quamquam** is not found in Caesar. To emphasize the concession, **tamen**, *still, however*, is often found in the principal clause.

hās cum Suēbī finibus expellere nōn potuissent, tamen vectīgālīs sibi fēcērunt, *although the Swabians had not been able to drive them from their territory, still they made them tributary.*

nam etsi sine perīculō proelium fore vidēbat, tamen committendum nōn putābat, *for though he saw that the battle would be without danger, still he did not think it should be undertaken.*

130. Notice the use of the conjunction **cum** with the following meanings :

Cum *temporal*, meaning *when*, regularly followed, in Narrative, by the Imperfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive. (§§ 111, 112.)

Cum *causal*, meaning *since*, followed by the Subjunctive. (§ 125.)

Cum *concessive*, meaning *although*, followed by the Subjunctive. (§ 129.)

Genitive with Adjectives

131. The following adjectives take the Objective Genitive :

cupidus, *desirous, eager.*

perītus, *experienced, skilled.*

imperītus, *inexperienced, ignorant.*

īnsuētus, *unaccustomed, inexperienced.*

cōnsciū, *conscious, aware.*

plēnus, *full.*

reī mīlītāris perītissimū habēbātur, *he was considered most skilful in military matters.*

cupidū rērum novārum, *desirous of a revolution.*

132.

EXERCISES

(A) 1. Although the battle lasted ¹ from the seventh hour till late at night,² still we could not take the town. 2. When he had discovered what the enemy were going to do, he remained in camp. 3. Although this tribe had narrow territories, it was desirous of carrying on war. 4. Since Considius was consid-

ered most skilful in military matters, he was sent ahead with the cavalry. 5. Although Caesar did not know the plans of the enemy, he decided to wait until they should return.

¹ *the battle lasted*; in Latin, '*it was fought*.'

² *till late at night*, **ad multam noctem**.

(B) **Book I. 45, 46.** 1. Although Fabius conquered the Arvernians, he did not reduce them to a province. 2. Since the horsemen were hurling weapons against our men, Caesar stopped speaking.¹ 3. Although the soldiers were eager for the battle, Caesar ordered them not to make an attack. 4. Even if Gaul is free, still it cannot use its own laws. 5. When this had been announced to Caesar, he ordered his men to return to camp. 6. Although they are ignorant of the custom of the Roman people, he will not pardon them.

¹ *stopped speaking*. Note expression in text.

(C) **Book III. 19.** 1. Although the Gauls were desirous of undertaking war, yet they fled at the first attack of our men. 2. When the signal had been given, they made a sally from two gates. 3. Since the enemy were hindered by the loads which they carried, they could not withstand even¹ the first attack. 4. Although a large number were killed, a few escaped. 5. Since they wished to give as little time as possible to the Romans to arm themselves, they arrived out of breath. 6. Although Sabinus knew that his men were eager for the signal, he did not order the sally to be made.

¹ *not even*, **nē . . . quidem**. Put the emphatic word between.

LESSON XXXI

133.

REVIEW

(B) **Book I. 47.** Ariovistus sent a messenger to Caesar, to ask that he should a second time appoint a day for a conference. Although the matters which they had begun to discuss the day before had not been finished, Caesar was unwilling to go himself, or to send envoys and expose them to such danger. However,¹ because he desired to know what Ariovistus would say,² it seemed best to him to send Valerius Procillus and Marcus Mettius. When they had come to Ariovistus in³ camp, and were attempting to speak, he called out that they were spies, and threw them into chains. Caesar ought not to have sent these men to Ariovistus, since there was no reason for a conference, and he knew that the danger to⁴ them would be great.

¹ *however*, **autem**, the second word of its clause.

² *would say*, § 98.

³ *in*, **in** with accusative.

⁴ *to*; in Latin, 'of.'

(C) **Book III. 20.** Since Crassus was about to carry on war in those places where, a few years before, a lieutenant of the Roman people had been killed, and his army routed, he used extraordinary care that a

grain supply should be provided and auxiliaries prepared. When many men had been called out from the states which were near those regions, Crassus led his army into the territory of the Sotiates, who engaged in a cavalry battle with his men. Although the Sotiates were especially strong in cavalry forces, the Romans drove them back, and attacked the infantry, which was suddenly led forth from a valley near the place where the cavalry had been fighting.

LESSON XXXII

Subjunctive of Characteristic. — B. 283. 1, 2; A. & G. 535, *a, b*; H. 591. 1, 2, 4, 5.

Ablative of Description. — B. 224; A. & G. 415; H. 473. 2.

Genitive of Description. — B. 203; A. & G. 345; H. 440. 3.

Subjunctive of Characteristic

134. A Relative Clause which expresses an *essential characteristic* of an antecedent, usually otherwise undefined, takes the Subjunctive. This is called the Subjunctive of Characteristic.

neque adhūc quisquam repertus est quī mortem recūsāret, *nor has any one yet been found who refused to die.*

est nēmō reliquus quem nōn superāre possīmus, *there is no one else whom we cannot conquer.*

This construction is especially common after the following expressions :

sunt quī, *there are some who.*

nēmō est quī, *there is no one who.*

sōlus est quī, *he is the only one who.*

quis est quī, *who is there who?*

Descriptive Ablative and Genitive

135. A noun *with a modifying Adjective* may be used in either the Ablative or Genitive case to describe another noun. This is called the Ablative or Genitive of Description.

vir cōsilī magnī et virtūtis, a man of great shrewdness and valor.

immānī magnitūdine hominēs, men of huge size.

Genitive of Measure

136. When such description indicates *measure*, the Genitive only must be used. This is also called the Genitive of Measure.

iter paucōrum diērum, a few days' journey.

flūmen erat trium pedum in altitudinem, the river was three feet deep; or, flūmen erat trēs pedēs altum. (§ 82.)

137. EXERCISES

(A) 1. There were no lands that could be given to so great a multitude without injury. 2. Dumnorix was a man of great influence¹ among the Haeduans. 3. Terms ought not to be received from those who have made war without cause. 4. They could not cross a river one hundred feet wide.² 5. He is the only one who cannot be induced to give³ hostages.

¹ of great influence. Express in two ways.

² one hundred feet wide. Express in two ways.

³ to give, § 60.

(B) **Book I. 48, 49.** 1. A place about six hundred feet long was picked out, suitable for two legions. 2. The forces of Ariovistus are the only ones which can keep our troops from supplies. 3. The Germans were very swift and of great courage, and terrified our men. 4. There is no army in all Gaul that can overcome the forces of the Romans. 5. They were (men) of so great swiftness that they equalled the speed of the horses. 6. They were cut off from grain and supplies by a river two hundred feet in width.¹

¹ *two hundred feet in width.* Express in two ways.

(C) **Book III. 21, 22.** 1. The Aquitanians accomplished nothing with their mines, though they were two hundred feet long.¹ 2. What can a young man not accomplish who understands that everything depends on himself? 3. The Aquitanians were men of great courage, and very skilful in arms.² 4. No one has yet been discovered who thought the enemy could conquer without a leader. 5. One³ who, without a large number of soldiers, attacks a tower of so great height, is a man of courage.

¹ *two hundred feet long.* Express in two ways.

² *in arms,* § 131.

³ *one,* is.

LESSON XXXIII

Exhortations. — B. 273-275; A. & G. 439; H. 559. 1, 2.

Prohibitions. — B. 276. c; A. & G. 450; H. 561. 1.

Wishes. — B. 279; A. & G. 441; H. 558.

Dative of Purpose; Double Dative. — B. 191. 1, 2; A. & G. 382; H. 425. 3, 433.

Exhortations

138. An exhortation, commonly introduced in English by the auxiliary *let*, is expressed by the Present Subjunctive. The negative is *nē*.

This construction may be used in the Third Person Singular and the First and Third Persons Plural.

hōs latrōnēs interficiāmus, let us kill these robbers.
exeant, let them go out.

This Subjunctive in the Third Person is sometimes called, with greater exactness, a Jussive Subjunctive.

Commands and Prohibitions

139. A prohibition, or negative command, may be expressed by the Imperative of the verb *nōlō*,

nōlī (singular), **nōlīte** (plural), followed by the Present Infinitive.

nōlī (**nōlīte**) **hoc facere**, *do not do this*.

The following illustrates the method of expressing commands and exhortations, positive and negative.

POSITIVE	NEGATIVE
mitte , <i>send</i> .	nōlī mittere , <i>do not send</i> .
mittat , <i>let him send</i> .	nē mittat , <i>let him not send</i> .
mittāmus , <i>let us send</i> .	nē mittāmus , <i>let us not send</i> .
mittite , <i>send</i> .	nōlīte mittere , <i>do not send</i> .
mittant <i>let them send</i> .	nē mittant , <i>let them not send</i> .

Wishes

140. Wishes are expressed by the Subjunctive, usually introduced by **utinam**, *would that!* The negative is **nē**.

The Present Subjunctive is used to express a wish that something may be so, and refers to future time.

(**utinam**) **adsint**, *may they be present*.

The Imperfect Subjunctive is used to express a wish that something were so (that is not so), and refers to present time.

utinam adessent, *would that they were present!*

The Pluperfect Subjunctive is used to express a

wish that something had been so (that was not so), and refers to past time. Cf. §§ 147, 148.

utinam adfuissent, *O that they had been present!*

Dative of Purpose; Double Dative

141. The Dative case is used to express the purpose of an action, or that for which a thing serves. It is called the Dative of Purpose or Service, and is often accompanied by another Dative, to indicate the person or thing affected. This combination is called the Double Dative.

decimam legiōnem subsidiō nostrīs mīsit, *he sent the tenth legion to the assistance of our men.*

Gallīs magnō erat impedimentō, *it was (for) a great disadvantage to the Gauls.*

The Datives of Purpose most frequently used are **ūsui**, **subsidiō**, **praesidiō**, **auxiliō**, **cūrae**, **bonō**, **impedimentō**.

142.

EXERCISES

(A) 1. Let us send the tenth legion as an aid to our men. 2. Would that Caesar were now in command of these forces! 3. O that we had not surrendered all our possessions¹ to the enemy! 4. Do not come without the cavalry which was enrolled. 5. May this battle be favorable to you. 6. Let him not lead back the forces which were sent as a relief to us.

7. Withstand the attack bravely, and the enemy will return to their own town.

¹ *all our possessions, nostra omnia.*

(B) **Book I. 50, 51.** 1. Let us lead out the troops from camp, and draw up our line of battle. 2. Would that we had not given them an opportunity for fighting! 3. Caesar left the auxiliaries as a protection for the smaller camp. 4. O that they would not deliver us into slavery! 5. Do not fight before the new moon, if you wish to conquer. 6. Let him not use the auxiliaries for a show. 7. Would that it were not ordained that the Germans should conquer!

(C) **Book III. 23, 24.** 1. Let them not be disturbed because the town has been captured. 2. Would that we had summoned aid from those states which are near Aquitania! 3. Crassus noticed that they had left enough soldiers for the protection of the camp. 4. Draw up your line of battle. I will wait to see¹ what plan the enemy adopt. 5. Do not appoint the next day for the battle. 6. Would that our soldiers had great knowledge of military matters! 7. Let us choose as leaders those who have been with Sertorius for many years.

¹ *wait to see, one word.*

LESSON XXXIV

CONDITIONS

B. 301-304. 1; A. & G. 515-517; H. 574-579.

143. A Conditional Sentence has two clauses :
(a) a Protasis (or Condition), which *assumes* something as true ; (b) an Apodosis (or Conclusion), which *asserts* something as true only *if* the thing assumed is true.

A Condition may be one of three kinds :

1. A Condition represented as a Fact.
2. A Condition represented as a Possibility.
3. A Condition represented as Contrary to Fact.

Conditions of Fact

144. Both clauses regularly take the Indicative.
Any tense may be used.

hī, sī quid erat dūrius, concurrēbant, if any extra hard fighting was going on, these men would run up.

sī quid vult, ad mē venīre oportet, if he wishes anything, he ought to come to me.

sī obsidēs mihi dabuntur, pācem vōbīscum faciam, if hostages are given to me, I will make peace with you.

haec si ēnūntiāta erunt, gravissimum supplicium dē nōbīs sūmet, *if this is announced, he will inflict upon us the severest punishment.*

Note that in the last two sentences, the English uses the Present Tense in the Protasis to refer to *future* time, while the Latin uses the Future or Future Perfect. Note also that the Future Perfect is used to represent the action of the Protasis as *completed* before the action of the Apodosis occurs.

Conditions of Possibility

145. These conditions refer to future time. Both clauses regularly take the Present Subjunctive, but the Protasis very rarely takes the Perfect Subjunctive, the use of which corresponds to that of the Future Perfect Indicative in § 144.

neque, aliter si faciat, ūllam inter suōs habeat auctōritātem, *and if he should do otherwise, he would have no authority among his people.*

146. Conditions of Possibility are sometimes called Less Vivid Future Conditions, in distinction from Future Conditions of Fact (illustrated in the last two sentences in § 144), which are called More Vivid Future Conditions.

Conditions Contrary to Fact

147. These conditions imply that the thing assumed as true is not really true, and may refer to

present or past time. Present time is indicated by the Imperfect Subjunctive ; past time by the Pluperfect Subjunctive.

sī quid mihi ā Caesare opus esset, ad eum venīrem, if I needed anything of Caesar, I should come to him (implying that I do not need anything).

sī Caesar in Ītaliā nōn profectus esset, Carnūtēs hoc cōnsilium nōn cēpissent, if Caesar had not started for Italy, the Carnutes would not have formed this plan (implying that Caesar has started).

Mixed Conditions

148. The time referred to in the Protasis may be different from that of the Apodosis, if the sense requires.

sī mihi amīcus est, mē iuvābit, if he is my friend, he will help me.

quod sī mātūrius facere voluissent, locuplētioribus hīs et melioribus oīvibus ūterēmur, if they had been willing to do this before, we should now find them richer and better citizens.

Future Conditions in Indirect Discourse

149. In Indirect Discourse there is no distinction between Future Conditions of Fact, and Conditions of Possibility ; for the Protasis in both cases must have the Subjunctive (§ 50) (Present or Perfect after present or future tenses, and Imperfect or

Pluperfect after past tenses), and the Apodosis in both cases must have a Future Infinitive (§§ 44, 45) or its equivalent (§ 73. 2).

$sī\ obsidēs\ \left\{ \begin{array}{l} dabuntur \\ datī\ erunt \end{array} \right\},\ pācem\ faciēmus,$ *if hostages are given, we will make peace.*

$sī\ obsidēs\ \left\{ \begin{array}{l} dentur \\ datī\ sint \end{array} \right\},\ pācem\ faciāmus,$ *if hostages should be given, we would make peace.*

$dīcunt\ sī\ obsidēs\ \left\{ \begin{array}{l} dentur \\ datī\ sint \end{array} \right\},\ pācem\ sē\ factūrōs,$ *they say that if hostages are given, they will make peace, or, they say that if hostages should be given, they would make peace.*

$dīxērunt\ sī\ obsidēs\ \left\{ \begin{array}{l} darentur \\ datī\ essent \end{array} \right\},\ pācem\ sē\ factūrōs,$ *they said that if hostages were (or should be) given, they would make peace.*

150.

EXERCISES

(A) 1. If they should flee, they would be captured.
 2. If anything has happened to the Romans, I have not heard (of) it. 3. If the Romans conquer the Helvetians, they will take (their) liberty away from the Haeduan.¹ 4. Had he done otherwise, he never would have finished the war. 5. He said he should make an attack on them if they crossed the river.

6. If Caesar were now with us, we should not fear the Germans.

¹ *Haeduan*s, Dative of Reference.

(B) **Book I. 52.** 1. If the enemy should suddenly make an attack on our men, they would not be able to hurl their javelins. 2. They would have sent the lieutenant to our assistance, if they had noticed this. 3. If Caesar were in command of the troops, they would not be in difficulty. 4. I shall not begin battle on the left wing, unless I see that that part of the line is the strongest. 5. They said that if they leaped upon the enemy from above, they should put them to flight. 6. Do not throw your javelins against the enemy, unless they make an attack upon you. 7. Had he not put a lieutenant in charge of our men, they would have been routed.

(C) **Book III. 25, 26.** 1. If the enemy should fight bravely, Crassus could not circle their camp. 2. What would Caesar do if he were in camp, and had not been surrounded by the enemy? 3. Despairing of flight, they will fight more bravely, unless they can get back into camp. 4. If some had driven the defenders from the wall, others would have torn down the fortifications. 5. Late in the day, he reported that if they did not hasten to seek safety, the enemy would surround them. 6. If the enemy lead out their forces from camp, our men will fight most vigorously. 7. Had they not torn down these fortifications, the enemy would not have sought safety in flight.

LESSON XXXV

151.

REVIEW

(B) **Book I. 53, 54.** When the battle had been renewed, the enemy were put to flight, and fled to the river. A few, who trusted in their strength, swam across. There were some who crossed over in boats which they found, but the rest were put to death by our cavalry. Ariovistus himself would have been killed, if he had not found a skiff fastened to the shore, and sought safety in it.

While he was following the enemy, Caesar fell in with Valerius Procillus, whom the guards were dragging along. Having rescued him, Caesar said: "I should have little pleasure in this victory, if you were now in the hands of the enemy. Would that the other envoys, whom I sent to Ariovistus, had also been restored to me. Let us hope that they may be found and brought back."

(C) **Book III. 27, 28, 29.** Caesar desired to finish the war as quickly as possible,¹ and so he led his army against the Nervii and Menapii, who² were the only tribes in Gaul from which envoys had not come to him. He would quickly have conquered these tribes also,³ if they had not carried on the war in a very different manner from the rest of the Gauls.

The scouts,⁴ whom Caesar sent to find out what was being done, reported as follows:⁵ "The enemy have withdrawn into the forests; and if we should try to follow them, we should be driven back and lose many of our men. Let us cut down the forest, and pile up the timber for a rampart; and if they attack us, we can defend ourselves. We should not be able to do this, if they should make an attack on us (while) off our guard."

¹ *as quickly as possible*, **quam celerrimē**.

² *who*. Make this agree with *tribes*.

³ *also*, **quoque**, which follows the word it modifies.

⁴ *scout*, **explōrātor**.

⁵ *as follows*, **ita**.

EXERCISES ON BOOK IV

152. Book IV. 1, 2. Sections 33, 60, 61, 64, 65.*

1. In the following year, a large number of the Tencteri crossed the Rhine, in order not to be kept by the Swabians from tilling the land. 2. One hundred thousand men of this tribe are in arms every year, and the rest stay at home. 3. The next year the former¹ are ordered to stay at home, and they support themselves and the rest. 4. They wish to have (some one) from whom they may buy pack animals, and so they permit traders to import them. 5. They do not use saddles in cavalry battles, and consider a horseman with a saddle very unskilful. 6. They take great pleasure in exercise, and when it is necessary, dare to jump down from their horses, and to fight on foot.

¹ *the former, illi.*

153. Book IV. 3, 4. Sections 55-57, 110-112.

1. After the Swabians had carried on war for many years with the Ubii, they made them tributary to themselves. 2. Having tried in vain¹ to cross the river, they pretended to return to their own homes. 3. They say that the lands of the Swabians lie vacant for many miles. 4. When they had been driven out from their own territory, they wandered about for

* These numbers refer to sections in this book which describe constructions to be used in the sentences that follow.

many years. 5. Having made a three days' march in one night, they fell upon the Menapians off their guard. 6. The guards which had been placed on this side of the Rhine prevented them from crossing.² 7. Having killed them, they seized their ships and crossed the river. 8. After they had been informed what was being done, they returned to their villages.

¹ *in vain, frūstrā.*

² *from crossing, § 79.*

154. Book IV. 5-7.

Sections 38, 39, 73.

In Gaul it is customary for the traders to tell the crowd what they have heard in the regions from which they have come, and the Gauls are often so disturbed by these rumors that they make very important plans on the spot. After learning these facts, Caesar thought that envoys would be sent¹ to the Germans to ask them to leave the Rhine; and he feared that he might encounter a very serious war. And so he demanded cavalry of the Gauls; and after getting ready a grain supply, marched against the Germans, who, (although) driven from home by the Swabians, thought that no one else could conquer them.

¹ *would be sent, § 73. 2.*

155. Book IV. 8-10.

Sections 125, 126, 129.

1. Since I can have no friendship with them, I shall not give them lands. 2. Although they begged Caesar not to move his camp nearer, they could not gain their request.¹ 3. It seemed best to the envoys to return home, because they wished to report these matters to their people. 4. It is not permitted them

to settle in Gaul, since they cannot protect their own territories. 5. They are complaining because the cavalry was sent across the river to plunder. 6. Savage nations inhabit the islands which are formed by the Rhine. 7. The envoys asked that they be permitted to return to Caesar in a few days.

¹ *gain their request, impetrō.*

156. Book IV. 11, 12. Sections 24-28, 43-45, 49-52.

1. When the envoys returned to Caesar, they showed what had been accomplished by them in three days. 2. They said they would restrain from battle the cavalry who had been sent ahead. 3. Caesar thought he had done everything that could be done, in order to learn of their demands. 4. When these terms had been offered by Caesar, they said they would accept them, and send hostages. 5. When the enemy saw whose cavalry had crossed the Meuse, they had no fear. 6. They said their envoys had returned to Caesar five days before, to ask for a truce. 7. They did not make an attack until¹ the cavalry came back.

¹ *until, § 120.*

157. Book IV. 13, 14. Sections 115-120, 134.

Caesar did not wish to listen to terms from those who had brought on war without provocation, after they had asked for peace, and so he determined to lead his forces out of camp against the enemy.

While he was forming his plans, a large number of Germans came to him in camp¹ to excuse themselves because they had used deceit the day before, and had

attacked his cavalry treacherously.² He ordered these to be detained. He reached the camp of the enemy before they could take up arms, and his arrival so terrified them that they did not know whether to flee or to defend the camp. There were some who resisted our men for a little time, but the rest, together with the women and children, left the camp, and fled until they came to the river.

¹ *in* = *into*.

² *treacherously*; in Latin, '*through treachery*.'

158. Book IV. 15, 16. Sections 61, 98-102, 104.

1. When the Gauls saw their people about to perish, they threw down their standards. 2. Caesar said he would give to those who were with him the privilege of remaining if they wished. 3. They ought not to have abandoned the standards when they heard the shouting behind them. 4. The Romans decided for many reasons that they must finish the war. 5. The Sugambri sent envoys to ask permission to cross into Gaul. 6. We do not think it right for the Ubii to be oppressed by the Swabians. 7. When they realize that we have both the ability and courage to lead our army across the Rhine, they will be afraid.

159. Book IV. 17, 18. Sections 138-140, 143-149.

1. Even if the difficulty of making a bridge is great, do not cross the Rhine in boats. 2. Would that this work were now being done! 3. Unless he had built this bridge, the army could not have crossed. 4. If they should make peace with him, he would answer

them kindly. 5. Let him have a strong guard at both ends of the bridge. 6. Finish the work and lead the army across.¹ 7. Would that they had not hidden themselves in the forest! 8. The Tencteri will urge the Sugambri to leave their territory. 9. He began to prepare material with which to build² the bridge. 10. He will make peace with them, if they bring hostages to him.

¹ *lead across*, *trādūc* (imperative). ² *to build*, § 33.

160. Book IV. 19, 20.

Sections 55–57, 110–112.

After cutting down the grain of the Swabians and promising the Ubii his assistance, Caesar learned that the Swabians had held a council and had picked out a place in which to wait for the Romans; but he had accomplished everything he wished, and so, having punished the Sugambri and inspired fear in the Germans, he decided to go back and cut down the bridge. When he learned what the size of Britain was, and what harbors it had, he thought it would be very helpful to him if he summoned the traders and asked them what they knew about the island, but he found that nothing was known to them except the seacoast.

161. Book IV. 21, 22.

Sections 61, 98–102, 104.

1. He ought to send Volusenus ahead with a ship of war to find out these things. 2. He may disembark if he wishes. 3. Volusenus is going to investigate these regions and report to Caesar in a few days. 4. He is permitted to receive under his protection those who brought hostages to him. 5. Those ships

which have been detained must be allotted to the cavalry. 6. He promised to return¹ quickly and report what he discovered. 7. The wind kept the transport ships eight miles² from the harbor. 8. We must do everything which we have planned. 9. We must yield to the power of the Roman people.

¹ *to return.* What tense?

² *eight miles,* § 81.

162. Book IV. 23, 24.

Sections 115-120, 134.

1. They went on board and waited at anchor till the weather should be fit for sailing. 2. The first ships reached Britain before the cavalry set sail from the farther harbor. 3. There is no suitable place in which the legions can disembark, because the water is not deep. 4. While all these things were being done, the anchors were weighed and the signal given. 5. Our soldiers hastened to jump from their ships and advance to the dry land before the enemy could hurl their weapons. 6. Caesar was wholly unacquainted with this sea, and wished everything to be done on time. 7. The barbarians, with all their limbs free, could prevent our men from advancing.

163. Book IV. 25, 26. Sections 24-28, 43-45, 49-52.

1. Caesar noticed that the shape of the ships and the strange sort of engines disturbed the enemy. 2. He asked his fellow-soldiers if they wished to betray the eagle to the enemy. 3. Caesar saw that his men were greatly disturbed because the enemy were hurling weapons on the exposed flank. 4. He thought that

the enemy would be dislodged. 5. The standard-bearer¹ cried out that he should do his duty to his commander and his country. 6. He knew that they would put the enemy to flight as soon as they stood on dry land. 7. He did not know whether these things were of use to his men or not.

¹ *standard-bearer* = *eagle-bearer*. Note text.

164. Book IV. 27, 28.

Sections 125, 126, 129.

As soon as the hostages, whom the enemy sent to Caesar, did what he had ordered, he pardoned them, and begged them not to make war on him without good cause. Although he pardoned their ignorance, he complained because they had thrown Commius the Atrebatian into chains, and had not sent him back. Since part of the hostages which they promised were at a distance, he ordered them to be sent to the continent in a few days. The ships in which the cavalry were carried approached Britain, but could not hold their course because a great storm suddenly came up and carried them back to the continent.

165. Book IV. 29-31.

Sections 38, 39, 73.

1. It happened that the tides were very high on that night because there was a full moon. 2. He caused those things which were of use to be brought from the continent. 3. We must keep them from supplies, and prolong the affair until winter. 4. The tide was so¹ high that it filled the ships which had been drawn up on dry land. 5. Although they were going to pass

the winter in Gaul, they had made no provision for grain. 6. The ships are so damaged by the storm that they cannot be repaired. 7. He brought it about that no one afterwards crossed to Britain to bring on war. 8. It happened that everything was lacking which was useful for carrying on war.

¹ *so, tam.*

166. Book IV. 32, 33.

Sections 138-140.

1. Let part of the legion march in that direction in which the dust was seen. 2. Would that Caesar had suspected the plans of the barbarians, and attacked them when their arms were laid aside! 3. It was reported to the general that the cohorts which were on guard had started in the same direction. 4. If the enemy attack you, throw your weapons quickly; let the cavalry dismount and fight on foot. 5. Do not be disturbed by the noise of the chariots, for if hard pressed, you will have an easy retreat. 6. The Britons fight with chariots, and daily practice makes them able to do many things with their horses at full speed.

167. Book IV. 34, 35.

Sections 33, 60, 61, 64, 65.

1. Caesar will keep his men in camp so that they may not be attacked by the enemy. 2. The barbarians sent messengers in all directions to tell what had happened. 3. Storms followed for so many days¹ that the enemy were kept from a battle. 4. Caesar feared that the same thing would happen. 5. They urged the rest, who were in the fields, to depart. 6. Dis-

turbed by the strange sort of fighting, they begged Caesar to send aid to them. 7. They gathered a large number of cavalry and infantry, so that they might the more easily² drive the Romans from the camp. 8. He ordered them to burn the buildings far and near, and return to camp. 9. Having killed many, they prevented the rest from escaping.³

¹ *days*, § 81. ² *easily*, **facile**. ³ *from escaping*, § 79.

168. Book IV. 36-38.

Sections 143-149.

If Caesar had not sailed on that night, the hostages which he ordered would have been brought to him, but the equinox was near, and he thought if he hastened he should arrive safely at the continent. After finding a suitable place, he disembarked some three hundred men, who started for the camp, but were surrounded by the Morini, who said, "Lay down your arms if you do not wish to be killed. If Caesar and his cavalry were here, they would defend you, but you cannot withstand our attack and will all be killed unless he comes to your assistance." But after those who said this saw that our cavalry were coming, they quickly turned and fled.

PART II

LESSON I

AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES, RELATIVE PRONOUNS, APPOSITIVES, AND PREDICATE NOUNS

Agreement of Adjectives. — B. 233–235, 246. 5 ; A. & G. 285–287, 296. *a* ; H. 394. 1, 4, 395. 1, 2, and N.

Agreement of Relative Pronouns. — §§ 10, 11 ; B. 250. 1–4, 251. 1, 5, 6 ; A. & G. 305, 306. *b* ; H. 396–398.

Agreement of Appositives and Predicate Nouns. — B. 167–169 ; A. & G. 281, 282. *c, d*, 283, 284 ; H. 393. 3, 7, 8, 9.

Agreement of Adjectives

169. Adjectives agree with their nouns in *gender, number, and case*.

170. An *Attributive* Adjective modifying two or more nouns generally agrees with the nearest.

pater meus et māter, pater et māter mea, my father and mother.

171. A *Predicate* Adjective modifying two or more subjects is generally Plural ; if the subjects are *persons* of different gender, the adjective is Masculine ; if *things*, Neuter.

pater et māter sunt mortuī, father and mother are dead.

dolor et voluptās sunt dissimillima, grief and pleasure are very unlike.

Agreement of Relative Pronouns

172. A Relative Pronoun regularly agrees with its antecedent in *gender* and *number*; but if it has a Predicate Noun it agrees with that instead.

Belgae quae est tertia pars Galliae, the Belgians who occupy (are) the third division of Gaul.

173. If the Relative has antecedents of different gender or number, it follows the rule for Predicate Adjectives. (§ 171.)

Agreement of Appositives

174. Appositives and Predicate Nouns agree in *case* with the nouns they describe.

Belgae sunt tertia pars Galliae, the Belgians occupy (are) the third division of Gaul.

ā Cicerōne cōnsule, by Cicero, the consul.

EXERCISES

175. Catiline I. 1-4. 1. Our expressions and countenances disturbed him not a bit. 2. Those watchmen of the city who were the night guard of the Palatine knew what Catiline had done. 3. For ten

days now, we have been permitting Catiline to plot our destruction. 4. The senate will immediately decree that Gaius Marius and Lucius Valerius, the consuls, see that the republic receives no harm. 5. Who of them did he think would not see what had been done, and where he had been? 6. Because Catiline wished to lay waste all Italy with fire and sword, Cicero condemned him for his recklessness. 7. The senate did not lack brave men, who took part in public discussions. 8. How long will this man live, who ought to have been punished¹ long ago with the severest punishments?

¹ *ought to have been punished.* Although the Perfect Infinitive with the Perfects **convēnit** and **oportuit** is sometimes found, the Present Infinitive is the regular construction, and should be used. See § 107.

LESSON II

PRONOUNS

Personal. — §§ 1-3.

Relative. — §§ 10, 11.

Demonstrative. — § 4.

Possessive. — §§ 12, 13.

Reflexive. — §§ 5-8.

Interrogative. — § 15.

Indefinite. — §§ 16, 17.

Genitive Forms of Personal Pronouns

176. The Genitive forms of the Personal Pronouns, *meī*, *tuī*, *suī*, *nostrī*, *vestrī*, are regularly used only as Objective Genitives. (§ 181.)

habētis ducem memorem vestrī, *you have a leader mindful of you.*

The Genitive Plural forms in *-um*, *nostrum* and *vestrum*, are regularly used as Partitive Genitives.

quem nostrum ignōrāre arbitrāris? *who of us do you think does not know?*

Iste and *Ille*

177. *Iste*, called the Demonstrative of the Second Person, often implies *contempt*, especially when addressing opponents.

Mānlius, iste centuriō, *Manlius, that centurion fellow of yours.*

Ille often refers to that which is well known or famous.

ille Fulvius, *the famous Fulvius*.

178. Such phrases as *one another, each other*, may be expressed by **inter sē**, **inter nōs**, **inter vōs**.

inter sē differunt, *they differ from each other*.

EXERCISES

179. Catiline I. 5-8. 1. The enemy have pitched their camp against us in the narrow passes of Etruria. 2. That fellow Catiline, who has arranged the murder of the chief men of the state, is living just as he has lived. 3. Their number is increasing daily, and we see them even in the senate. 4. For a certain reason, they were not able to make a move¹ against the state. 5. If any one defends you, Catiline, I shall review all your plans with him. 6. Who of you has plotted the destruction of the state, and has been forgetful² of us? 7. Cicero said that he had not acted³ too cruelly. 8. All his plans are clear to us. 9. He knew that all his plans were clear to them. 10. The best men will always defend their country. 11. Certain of⁴ the leading men fled from Rome for the sake of saving themselves.

¹ *make a move*; in Latin, '*move themselves*.'

² *forgetful*, **oblītus** with Genitive.

³ *he had not acted*; in Latin, '*it had not been done by him*.'

See § 44.

⁴ *of*, § 46.

LESSON III

REVIEW

180. Catiline I. 9-12. I know that there are in the senate (some) who are planning for¹ the destruction of the city, and yet I ask them for their vote. I also discovered who had been sent to kill me at early dawn, and told many influential men that those very men would come to me at that time. This being so, Catiline, I cannot permit you to stay with us any longer. Although you attacked² me when I was consul-elect, and wished to kill me, I did not stir up any public disturbance; and I feel very grateful to the immortal gods because the state has escaped so great a disaster. But I have not yet done what³ ought to be done, and what is best for the common welfare. Get out of the city, therefore, Catiline, and take with you all that mischievous gang of conspirators.

¹ *for, dē.*

² *attacked, § 129.*

³ *what; in Latin, 'that which,' or 'those (things) which.'*

LESSON IV

GENITIVE

Subjective and Objective Genitive. — B. 199, 200; A. & G. 343. Note 1, 347, 348; H. 440. 1, 2.

Descriptive Genitive. — § 135.

Genitive of Measure. — § 136.

Partitive Genitive. — § 46.

Genitive with Adjectives. — § 131.

Predicate Genitive. — B. 198. 3, 203. 5; A. & G. 343. *b, c*; H. 439. 3, 4, 5, 447.

Subjective and Objective Genitive

181. A Genitive limiting a noun often expresses the *subject* or *object* of the feeling or action implied in the noun limited.

concursum omnium bonorum, the coming together of all good citizens; i.e. all good citizens come together.

The Genitive *bonorum* expresses the *subject* of the verb idea implied in *concursum*.

amor patriae, love of country; i.e. one loves his country.

The Genitive *patriae* expresses the *object* of the verb idea implied in *amor*.

Genitive with Adjectives

182. The Genitive is used with many adjectives to complete their meaning. Among the common adjectives of this class are

cupidus	} <i>eager, desirous.</i>	memor, <i>mindful.</i>
avidus		particeps, <i>sharing.</i>
cōnscius,	<i>conscious.</i>	expers, <i>without a share.</i>
ignārus,	<i>ignorant.</i>	plēnus, <i>full.</i>
perītus,	<i>skilled.</i>	egēns, <i>in want.</i>
imperītus,	<i>unskilled.</i>	similis, <i>like.</i> (See § 127.)

avidī laudis fuistis, *you have been eager for praise.*

reī militāris perītissimus, *most expert in military matters.*

Predicate Genitive

183. A Possessive Genitive is often found in the predicate, especially with *esse* and *facere*.

est sapientiae vidēre calamitātem sēiūctam esse
nōn posse, *it is (the part) of wisdom to realize that
disaster cannot be kept away.*

EXERCISES

184. Catiline I. 13-16. 1. No one of those wicked men did what the consul commanded. 2. A crime of such enormity cannot be overlooked. 3. Love of country did not stand in the way of your mad deeds.¹ 4. Catiline was skilled in crime and desirous of killing the leading men of the state. 5. Certain of the

ex-consuls, whom you had selected for massacre, left that part of the seats unoccupied, as soon as you sat down. 6. We fear and hate this wicked band of conspirators,² all of whom are like you. 7. Cicero was a man of such compassion that he could³ not be influenced by hatred. 8. It is folly⁴ to pass over those things which pertain to the best welfare of the state. 9. We are not ignorant of your vices, nor of your disgrace in private life.

¹ *deeds*. Note the case used in the text.

² *wicked band of conspirators*; in Latin, '*conspiracy of wicked men*.'

³ *could*, § 39.

⁴ *folly*, *stultitia*.

LESSON V

GENITIVE WITH VERBS

With Verbs of Memory.—B. 206; A. & G. 350; H. 454, 455.

With Verbs of Feeling.—B. 209; A. & G. 354. *a, b*; H. 457.

With Verbs of Judicial Action.—B. 208; A. & G. 352; H. 456.

With *Interest* and *Rēfert*. —B. 210, 211; A. & G. 355; H. 449.

Verbs of Memory

185. *Verbs of Memory* — *meminī*, *reminīscor*, *remember*, *oblīvīscor*, *forget* — are generally followed by the Genitive when referring to *persons*, and by either the Genitive or the Accusative when referring to *things*. With Neuter Pronouns the Accusative is regular.

oblītus erat meī, *he had forgotten me.*

haec meminī, *I remember this.*

Verbs of Feeling

186. *Misereor*, *pity*, takes the Genitive.

miserēmini patris, *pity the father.*

The Impersonal Verbs, *paenitet*, *repent*, *miseret*, *pity*, *taedet*, *be weary*, *pudet*, *be ashamed*, *piget*, *be*

disgusted, take the Genitive of the *cause of the feeling*, and the Accusative of the *person affected*.

mē tamen meōrum factōrum numquam paenitēbit, *still I shall never repent of my actions* (literally, *it will never repent me of my actions*).

Verbs of Judicial Action

187. Verbs of Accusing, Condemning, and Acquitting take the Genitive of the *charge* or *penalty*.

accūsātus est prōditiōnis, *he was charged with treason*.

Interest and Rēfert

188. Interest and rēfert, *it is for the interest*, take the Genitive of *the person concerned*.

Clōdī intererat Milōnem perīre, *it was for the interest of Clodius that Milo should die*.

The *matter of concern* may be expressed by an Infinitive phrase, as above, or by a Neuter Pronoun. The *degree of concern* may be expressed by an Adverb, as **magnopere**, or by a Genitive of Indefinite Value, as **magnī, plūris, quantī**, etc.

Instead of the Genitive of *personal pronouns* to denote the person concerned, the corresponding *possessive pronoun* ending in **ā** is used.

quantī id rēfert meā ? *how much does that concern me ?*

EXERCISES

189. Catiline I. 17-20. 1. When you see yourself so deeply suspected by¹ all your fellow-citizens, and remember everything² you have done, are you not ashamed of your crimes? 2. Catiline has been charged with many murders and with the plundering of the allies, and Roman citizens are disgusted with him. 3. It is to my interest that Catiline should not set out into exile; but if he goes out,³ I shall see that you know what he has done. 4. If your country, which cannot forget her fear, should wish you to go off somewhere, should you hesitate to comply? 5. It greatly concerns the public welfare that the laws should not be broken down. 6. This being so, Catiline, if the senate decides⁴ that it wishes you to be killed, you ought⁵ to die with equanimity.

¹ *by*. Note text.

² *everything you have done*, § 11.

³ *goes out*. What time is referred to? See § 209.

⁴ *decides*. See Note 3.

⁵ *ought*. See Note 3.

LESSON VI

REVIEW

190. Catiline I. 21-25. Cicero accused Catiline of treason,¹ and urged him to leave² the city. There were many brave and honorable citizens who wished to lay violent hands on him; but even these men would have escorted³ him to the gates, if he had been willing to go. Fear of danger or disgrace had never recalled him from his mad purpose;⁴ but the consul thought it was⁵ worth while to show⁶ how great a disaster threatened⁷ him and his band of criminals. It was for the interest of the state that he be forced out. He was a man of such desperate purposes that he had already sent ahead armed men to the Forum Aurelium, with the silver eagle which he had often worshipped at his own home. The consul could not forget the frenzy of this band of wretches, who desired no war except a wicked one, and⁸ did not fear the penalty of the law.

¹ *treason*, *prōditiō*.

² *to leave*, § 60.

³ *would have escorted*, § 147.

⁴ *mad purpose*. One word.

⁵ *was*, §§ 44, 45.

⁶ *show*, *ostendō*.

⁷ *threatened*, § 24.

⁸ *and not*, *neque*.

LESSON VII

DATIVE

Dative of Indirect Object. — B. 187; A. & G. 361-372; H. 423-426.

Dative with Special Verbs. — § 84.

Dative with Compounds. — §§ 86-89.

Dative with Adjectives. — § 127.

Dative of Possession. — § 41.

Dative of Agent. — § 100.

Dative of Reference. — B. 188; A. & G. 376-378; H. 425. 2, 4.

Dative of Purpose or Service. — § 141.

Indirect Object

191. The Dative is used to express the object that is indirectly affected by the action of a verb.

Caesarī respondet, he replies to Caesar.

When the preposition *to* in English distinctly implies *motion*, the Accusative should be used, generally with a preposition. See §§ 34, 35.

ad suōs auxilium mīsit, he sent help to his men.

Dative of Reference or Interest

192. The object indirectly affected, not by the meaning of the verb alone but by that of the whole

clause or sentence, is also put in the Dative. This is called the Dative of Reference or Interest, and is often used with the Dative of Purpose to form what is called the Double Dative.

eī ferrum ē manibus extorsimus, *we wrested the sword from his hands.*

tertiam aciem nostris subsidiō mīsit, *he sent the third line as a relief to our men.*

Many verbs of *taking away*, and the like, take this Dative (especially of a person) instead of the Ablative of Separation. It is then sometimes called the Dative of Separation.

hunc mihi terrōrem ēripe, *take from me this terror.*

EXERCISES

193. Catiline I. 26-29. 1. Great unpopularity is threatening Cicero, because he thinks Catiline ought to be punished with death. 2. But if Catiline is killed, Cicero will not need to fear lest he be consumed in a flame of unpopularity. 3. It will bring¹ great glory to him, and he will make a fine requital to the Roman people, if he punishes this murderer of citizens. 4. But if he fears any danger, or the ill-will of posterity, he will allow Catiline to go out, and Italy will be ravaged by war. 5. Because these men have plotted against the republic, they are mischievous citizens, and we ought to punish them with death. 6. Cicero thought he ought not to neglect the safety of the state, and the Roman people felt the same way.

¹ *bring*; in Latin, 'be for.'

LESSON VIII

ACCUSATIVE AND ABLATIVE

Two Accusatives — Direct Object and Predicate Accusative. —

B. 177; A. & G. 392, 393; H. 410. 1.

Two Accusatives — Person and Thing. — B. 178; A. & G. 394, 396. *a, b*; H. 411.

Accusative of Extent. — § 81.

Ablative of Separation, Source, and Material. — § 68.

Ablative of Comparison. — § 70.

Ablative of Degree of Difference. — § 71.

Two Accusatives — Object and Predicate

194. Many verbs of *naming, making, showing, calling*, and the like, are followed by two Accusatives, referring to the *same person or thing*. One of these Accusatives may be an Adjective. With the Passive Voice, both Accusatives become Nominative, one becoming the Subject, and the other a Predicate Nominative.

This construction is especially common after *appellō, call, creō, elect, faciō, make, nōminō, name*.

Cicerōnem cōnsulem creāvērunt, they elected Cicero consul.

Cicerō cōsul creātus est, *Cicero was elected consul.*
eum fortem praedicābant, *they called him brave.*

Two Accusatives—Person and Thing

195. Some verbs of *asking* and *demanding*, and *doceō*, *teach*, may be followed by two Accusatives, one of the *person* and the other of the *thing*.

In the Passive, the Accusative which in the Active construction denotes the *person* becomes the Subject Nominative, and the Accusative of the *thing* is retained.

senātōrēs sententiam rogāvī, *I asked the senators their opinion.*

senātōrēs sententiam rogātī sunt, *the senators were asked their opinion.*

196. But instead of the Accusative of the *person* with verbs of *asking* and *demanding*, the Ablative with a preposition is the common construction. So always *petō* (ab), *ask, seek*, *postulō* (ab), *demand*, *quaerō* (ab, ex, dē), *ask*; usually *poscō* (ab), *demand*.

auxilium ā Caesare petere, *to beg aid of Caesar.*
quae causa esset ex eīs quaesiit, *he asked them what the reason was.*

197. *Moneō*, *advise, warn*, may be followed by two Accusatives — one of the *person*, and the other a Neuter Pronoun or Adjective expressing the *thing*.

eōs hoc moneō, *I give them this warning.*

EXERCISES

198. Catiline I. 30-33. 1. We shall call them wicked, if they conceal¹ what they see. 2. Catiline has asked aid even of the inexperienced. 3. The conspiracy will be checked for a few years, not suppressed forever. 4. The consul said that the state would be safe² for a certain short time. 5. This disease will become much worse, if that (wretch) alone is removed. 6. He demands of every one an opinion on matters of state.³ 7. The watchfulness of the consul has been much greater than the boldness of the conspirators.⁴ 8. We shall finally be free from the danger of treachery. 9. Jupiter has been rightly called the stay of this city. 10. We give them this advice: "Let them separate⁵ themselves from good citizens." 11. In some way or other, I shall keep him and his allies from the houses of the city and the temples of the gods.

¹ *conceal*. What time is referred to? ² *safe, salvus*.

³ *on matters of state*; in Latin, 'concerning the state.'

⁴ *conspirator, coniūrātus, ī*. ⁵ *let them separate, § 138*.

LESSON IX

REVIEW

199. Catiline II. 1-4. At last, fellow-citizens, we have wrested the dagger from that fellow's hands, and¹ shall no longer need to fear him. He has threatened us with fire and sword, and planned great harm to the city, but he has now been driven from his secret plots into open insurrection; he is overwhelmed with grief because he went out with the city (still) standing and left us still alive; but we ought to rejoice at his going.² If you ask my opinion, I cannot blame myself severely for³ not arresting him, for by his removal I could not keep all danger from the city. I do not think he is much to be feared outside the gates. The men he took with him can bring no disturbance to the state; but the men he left are much more powerful than those whom he took.

¹ *and . . . no longer, neque iam.*

² *at his going;* in Latin, '*that (or because) he has gone.*' Use either Perfect Infinitive or **quod** with the Subjunctive. See § 126.

³ *for not arresting.* Note text.

LESSON X

ABLATIVE

Ablative of Specification. — § 121.

Ablative of Means. — § 40.

Ablative with Adjectives and *Opus*. — B. 218. 2, 3, 8, 226. 2;
A. & G. 409. *a*, 411, 418. *b*, 431. *a*; H. 476. 1, 477. II, III, 481.

Ablative with Deponents. — § 113.

Ablative of Description. — § 135.

Ablative of Accompaniment. — § 62.

Ablative of Manner. — § 74.

Ablative of Cause. — § 122.

Ablative with Adjectives and *Opus*

200. 1. The adjectives *frētus*, *relying*, *contentus*, *contented*, *dignus*, *worthy*, *deserving*, *indignus*, *unworthy*, take the Ablative.

hūmānīs cōnsiliīs frētus, *relying on human wisdom*.

nōn fuit eō contentus, *he was not content with that*.

māiōre sunt suppliciō dignī, *they are deserving of greater punishment*.

2. The phrase *opus est*, *there is need*, takes the Ablative of the *thing needed*.

diligentiā opus est, *there is need of care*.

3. Verbs and adjectives of *plenty* and *want* often take the Ablative. Among these are *compleō*, *fill*, *egeō*, *need*, *careō*, *lack*, *refertus*, *filled full*.

urbīs omnibus rēbus refertās, *cities filled with everything*.

omissīs hīs rēbus quibus eget ille, *leaving out these things which he lacks*.

Plēnus, *full*, and *inops*, *destitute*, usually take the Genitive.

EXERCISES

201. Catiline II. 5-8. 1. The forces which we are daily preparing surpass¹ the army of Catiline in every respect.² 2. There is now need of severity. That former leniency of mine cannot be lasting. 3. Catiline will use these country spendthrifts as his soldiers. 4. Men of the greatest boldness have deserted that army, and remain in the city. 5. These assassins and profligates have lived on most intimate terms with Catiline, and are worthy of death. 6. For these reasons,³ I fear them even more than the army itself. 7. A large number of desperate men, weighed down by debt, had been collected⁴ from city and country. 8. The Forum is filled with robbers and murderers, who are not satisfied with that which they have planned against the consul. 9. He has gone out by the Aurelian Way, but those who remain here are devising evil and crime.

¹ *surpass*, *praestāre* with Dative.

² *in every respect*; in Latin, '*in respect to all things*.'

³ *for these reasons*, § 122.

⁴ *had been collected*, § 206.

LESSON XI

ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE. TIME AND PLACE

Ablative Absolute. — §§ 55-57.

Time and Place. — §§ 34, 35, 80, 81.

EXERCISES

(*Use the Ablative Absolute when possible.*)

202. Catiline II. 9-11. 1. Having squandered their inheritances and wasted their fortunes, they think of nothing but plundering. 2. When a short time has elapsed,¹ we shall have to fight with these reckless gangs of desperate men. 3. If in my consulship these men are put out of the way,² there will be no one here at Rome who can³ make war upon us. 4. But if they stay at home, we shall have to fear⁴ them, for they are beyond hope, and unendurable. 5. If I were sure⁵ that some disaster was threatening them, I should think the republic most fortunate. 6. When these men are either reformed or removed, there will be no one for many years to plan⁶ the destruction of the state. 7. Let them go away from home, let them go out of the city, or if they stay in the city, let them keep quiet.

¹ *has elapsed.* Use passive of *intermittō*.

² *are put out of the way,* § 209.

³ *can,* § 134.

⁵ *were sure,* § 147.

⁴ *have to fear,* § 105.

⁶ *to plan,* § 134.

LESSON XII

REVIEW

203. Catiline II. 12-14. The consul, having barely escaped being killed at his own house, and having called the senate together, laid the whole matter before the senators. Catiline, a man of the greatest boldness, came into the senate house with the others. No senator saluted him, for they all regarded him as a most dangerous enemy. They knew that he had been at Laeca's house on that night, and had mapped out the plan of the war. Nor was he content with this, but had already sent ahead arms and military standards to Manlius, who, having pitched his camp at Faesulae, was waiting for his leader. He even used that silver eagle, for which a shrine had been made at his house. When¹ all these plans had been disclosed, Catiline left the city; and there were some at Rome who said² that he had been driven into exile by the violent threats of the consul.

¹ *when*, etc. Use Ablative Absolute.

² *said*, § 134.

LESSON XIII

VERBS: AGREEMENT, VOICE, TENSE, SEQUENCE OF TENSES. DIRECT QUESTIONS

Agreement of Verbs. — B. 254. 1, 4, 255; A. & G. 316, 317, *a, c, d*; H. 388, 389. 1, 392. 1, 2.

Voice. — B. 256; A. & G. 156, 208. *d*; H. 518. 1.

Tense. — B. 259. 4, 260. 1, 2, 4; 261. 2; A. & G. 466, 471. *b*; H. 533. 1, 535. 1.

Sequence of Tenses. — §§ 30, 31.

Direct Questions. — §§ 18–20.

Agreement

204. A Verb agrees with its Subject in *person* and *number*.

When a verb has more than one subject, it either is *plural*, or agrees with the *nearest subject*.

et pater et fīlius mortuī sunt, both father and son are dead.

duae filiae et ūnus ē fīliīs captus est, the two daughters and one of the sons were captured.

205. Where the subjects are of *different persons* and one is of the *first person*, the verb is in the *first*

person plural; where the subjects are of the *second* and *third persons*, the verb is in the *second person plural*. This is like the English usage, where *we* generally stands for *I and you*, *I and he*, or *I and they*; and plural *you* may stand for *you and he*, or *you and they*.

sī tū et Tullia valētis, ego et Cicerō valēmus, *if you and Tullia are well, Cicero and I are well.*

206. A Collective noun occasionally has a plural verb.

multitūdō hominum convēnerant, *a crowd of men had collected.*

Voice

207. The Active and Passive Voices in Latin are used very much as in English, but the *impersonal passive* use of *intransitive* verbs is peculiar to the Latin.

acriter pugnātum est, *a fierce battle was fought.*

postquam eō ventum est, *after they came there.*

contendendum erat nobīs, *we had to hurry.*

Tense

208. In most cases, the simple Past tense in English should be translated by the Latin Perfect; *was* and *were*, generally by the Imperfect. The Imperfect expresses *continued*, *customary*, or *repeated* action or condition.

209. Where the English uses the Present tense after *when, if, etc.*, referring to future time, the Latin, more exactly, uses the Future or Future Perfect.

cum hoc perfēcerit, abībit, when he finishes (or has finished) this, he will leave.

quam diū quisquam erit quī tē dēfendere audeat, vivēs, as long as there is any one who dares defend you, you will live.

210. With *iam, iam diū, iam prīdem, iam dūdum* the Present is regularly used of action involving both *past* and *present* time.

pestem quam tū in nōs iam diū māchināris, the evil which you have long (now for a long time) been plotting against us.

The Imperfect is used in a similar way as an equivalent for the English Pluperfect.

domicilium Rōmae multōs iam annōs habēbat, he had had his residence at Rome for many years.

211. With the Subjunctive in *Independent* Clauses, as in Wishes, Exhortations, and Conditional Sentences, the Present tense refers to *future* time, the Imperfect to *present* time, and the Pluperfect to *past* time. (§§ 138, 140, 145-148.)

With the Subjunctive in *Dependent* Clauses, the Present and Imperfect tenses refer to the

same time as the principal verb, or to *later* time; the Perfect and Pluperfect tenses to *previous* time.

EXERCISES

212. Catiline II. 15-18. 1. Have you and I, fellow-citizens, feared that Catiline would go¹ to Marseilles? 2. But he must go² into exile, in order that the danger of this war may be kept from us. 3. If these men stay³ here at Rome with us, they can³ be won over to the republic. 4. Part of these men have now for a long time been deeply in debt, and we are more anxious to reform them than to punish them. 5. When you hear that Catiline has gone to Manlius, shall you not see that he is much more to be feared? 6. All of you know why we desired that⁴ he should go to Manlius rather than to Marseilles. 7. If he had gone⁵ to Marseilles, we should not have had to fear, should we, that he would bear arms against the state?

¹ *would go*, § 65.

² *must go*, § 105.

³ *stay, can*. What time?

⁴ *desired that*. Use *optō ut*. Look out for tenses.

⁵ *had gone*, § 147.

LESSON XIV

SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDEPENDENT CLAUSES

Hortatory and Jussive Subjunctive. — § 138.

Prohibitions. — § 139.

Subjunctive in Wishes. — § 140.

Deliberative Subjunctive. — B. 277; A. & G. 444; H. 557, 559. 4.

213. The Deliberative Subjunctive is used in questions implying *doubt*, *indignation*, or *appropriateness*. With this last meaning compare the similar use of *should* in English. Such questions are rhetorical in form and do not expect an answer.

quid agam, iūdicēs? *what am I to do, gentlemen (of the jury)?*

quid ego tē invitem? *why should I invite you?*

EXERCISES

214. Catiline II. 19-21. 1. Let us all bring help to this most glorious city against those who desire to be dictators. 2. Why should they expect the offices which they are attempting to secure? 3. Would that there were perfect harmony among all good citizens! 4. Do not give¹ just the same

warning to them as to the others. 5. Let them not take pleasure in their newly acquired wealth. 6. May they not obtain that which with wicked purpose they desire. 7. Put these men in the class of robbers, but give them this warning. 8. Let them not think that we shall longer endure² such robbery. 9. O that the immortal gods in person had helped us! 10. The third class consists³ of Sulla's colonists, who as a whole are excellent men. 11. Let them not think that they can secure these offices when⁴ the state is in a disturbed condition.

¹ *give . . . warning.* Note expression in the text.

² *shall endure*, §§ 44, 45.

³ *consists.* Use **sum** and a Predicate Genitive.

⁴ *when, etc.* Use the Ablative Absolute.

LESSON XV

REVIEW

215. Catiline II. 22-25. Do not call back these murderers from Catiline; let them perish in the snows of the Apennines.¹ But let these beardless boys of Catiline's choosing, with their well-combed locks and long-sleeved tunics, also² go out and perish with him. What shall I say, fellow-citizens, in order to show you what sort of³ forces Catiline is going to have? Let us compare our own armies and generals with the forces of that outlaw; for if we do⁴ this, we shall see how very weak he is. In the first place we have the treasury, the revenues, and⁵ the provinces; he is without them. In the next place, firmness, justice, foresight, and hopefulness are contending with extravagance, iniquity, recklessness, and utter despair. In a contest of such a sort, the immortal gods will compel us to win.

¹ *Apennines*. Note the number in Latin.

² *also*, § 251. *h*.

³ *what sort of*, **qualis**

⁴ *do*. Note the time.

⁵ *and*. Omit.

LESSON XVI

SUBJUNCTIVE

Subjunctive of Characteristic. — § 134.

Subjunctive of Characteristic Implying Cause or Concession. —

B. 283. 3; A. & G. 535. *e*; H. 592, 593. 2.

Subjunctive of Purpose, Pure and Relative. — § 33.

Subjunctive of Characteristic Implying Cause

216. A Relative Clause of Characteristic often implies Cause; less frequently, Concession.

Ō fortunāte adulēscēns, quī tuae virtūtis Homērum praecōnem invēneris! *O fortunate youth, since you have found in Homer the herald of your valor!*

Subjunctive of Characteristic with Adjectives

217. Dignus, *worthy*, indignus, *unworthy*, sōlus, ūnus, *only*, idōneus, *suitable*, are followed by a Relative Clause of Characteristic.

nōn erit idōneus quī ad bellum mittātur, *he will not be a suitable man to be sent to the war.*

EXERCISES

218. Catiline II. 26–29. 1. I sent Metellus ahead to check all of Catiline's attempts. 2. There are

gladiators who are better disposed than part of the patricians. 3. They are unworthy to live with citizens. 4. Because I am their consul, I shall either live with them or die for them. 5. There will be no movement against the state which I cannot check. 6. Catiline left these men in the city, so that his wicked undertakings might be carried out. 7. Since I have informed the colonists about this night raid of Catiline, they will provide sufficient protection for their cities. 8. These matters were referred to the Senate, so that no¹ danger might threaten the city. 9. In this cruel war, not even a wicked man has paid the penalty for his crimes. 10. This city is safe, since² the gods are defending it.

¹ *so that no danger, nē quid periculī.* See §§ 17, 33, 46.

² *since, etc.* Express by a relative clause.

LESSON XVII

SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE OR DESIRE

With Verbs of Urging and Commanding. — § 60, 61.

With Verbs of Asking and Demanding. — § 64.

With Verbs of Fearing. — § 65.

Verbs of Deciding

219. Verbs of Deciding, such as *statuō*, *cōstituō*, *dēcernō*, may be followed either (*a*) by an Object Clause of Purpose, or (*b*) by a Complementary Infinitive, or (*c*) by an Infinitive of Indirect Discourse. Note the three different meanings: (*a*) to decide (with authority) that another person shall do something; (*b*) to decide to do something oneself; (*c*) to decide that something is so.

(*a*) *dēcrēvit senātus ut Opimius vidēret nē quid rēs pūblica dētrimenti caperet*, *the senate decreed that Opimius should see that the state received no harm.*

(*b*) *Caesar Rhēnum trānsire dēcrēverat*, *Caesar had decided to cross the Rhine.*

(*c*) *statuit sibi Rhēnum esse trānseundum*, *he decided that he ought to cross the Rhine.*

EXERCISES

220. Catiline III. 1-4. 1. Cicero urged the citizens to rejoice¹ because their city had been rescued² from fire and sword, and their wives and children had been spared. 2. He decided to put before them the things that he had disclosed in the senate, and to ask them to spend all their time in the effort to provide for their safety. 3. Do not fear that his companions in crime will remain at Rome, for I shall persuade them to go. 4. At that time, when Cicero drove Catiline out of the city, he did not command³ him to go into exile, for he feared the odium of that word. 5. Let us not desire of the immortal gods that Lentulus should stir up a war beyond the Alps. 6. I am afraid that you cannot know, fellow-citizens, by what method all this has been discovered.

¹ rejoice, *laetor*.

² had been rescued, § 236.

³ command. Use both *iubeō* and *imperō*.

LESSON XVIII

REVIEW

221. Catiline III. 5-9. Cicero summoned two patriotic praetors, who were fit to undertake the matter, and sent them with a number¹ of selected men, whose assistance he had often made use of, to arrest the envoys of the Allobroges and seize the letters. He gave them orders to hand over the letters with unbroken seals. In the morning, he called the senate together and summoned the conspirators, who² as yet suspected nothing. There were many eminent men at Rome who urged Cicero to open the letters. They were afraid that the consul would discover nothing, and that too great an uproar would be brought upon the state. Cicero, however, could not be persuaded to open the letters, and summoned the senate, as has been said. Volturcius was brought in and advised to tell what he knew. He said that Lentulus had instructed Catiline to approach the city as soon as possible with his army.

¹ *a number of*; in Latin, '*several*.'

² *who, etc.* Translate by a participle clause.

LESSON XIX

CLAUSES OF RESULT. VERBS OF HINDER- ING, RESTRAINING, DOUBTING

Pure Result Clauses. — §§ 38, 39.

Relative Result Clauses. — B. 284. 2; A. & G. 537. 2, and N. 1; H. 591. 2.

Substantive Result Clauses. — § 73.

Verbs of Hindering, Restraining, Doubting. — §§ 78, 79.

Relative Result Clauses

222. A Result Clause is often introduced by a Relative Pronoun or Adverb, where the sense permits, instead of by *ut*.

sī quis est tālis quī in hōc mē accūset, if any one is of such a mind as to blame me in this matter.

These Relative clauses of Result are also clauses of Characteristic, and no sharp line can be drawn between the two. (See § 134.)

EXERCISES

223. Catiline III. 10-13. 1. Lentulus was so conscience-stricken by his crime that he could not deny this, but confessed everything. 2. This likeness of your grandfather, Lentulus, did not keep

you from conspiring with the Gauls against your native land. 3. The expressions, the glances, and the silence of these men, fellow-citizens, made them seem to betray themselves, rather than be betrayed by others. 4. The power of conscience ought to have prevented Catiline from getting the assistance of slaves, although in wickedness he surpassed every one. 5. It happened for this reason that I asked the senate what it wished to be done in regard to the evidence offered. 6. Lentulus was of so great a natural ability and skill in speaking, that no one could doubt that he surpassed all others. 7. No one was so seriously disturbed as not to recognize his own seal.

LESSON XX

TEMPORAL CLAUSES

Temporal Clauses with *postquam*, *ubi*, *ut*, etc. — § 110.

Temporal Clauses with *cum*. — §§ 111, 112.

Temporal Clauses with *dum* and *quoad*. — §§ 117-119.

Temporal Clauses with *priusquam*. — §§ 115, 116, 120.

Temporal Clauses with *Cum*

224. The following uses of **Cum** Temporal may be stated :

I. **Cum**, meaning *when*, is followed by the Subjunctive, generally Imperfect or Pluperfect, to describe the *circumstances* which *accompany* or *precede* the action of the main verb.

This construction is the one commonly found with **cum** in narrative.

nam cum sē in rēgnum suum recēpisset nōn fuit eō contentus, *for when he had retreated into his own kingdom, he was not content with that.*

This use of **cum** merges into its *causal* or *concessive* use, where the circumstances described give the *reason because of which* (causal), or the *fact in spite of which* (concessive), the principal statement is true. **potestne**

tibi haec lūx, Catilīna, esse iūcunda, cum sciās . . . ?
can the light of day, Catiline, give you any pleasure, when you realize (the situation) ? Is the **cum** in the last clause *causal, concessive, or temporal* ? (See § 130.)

2. **Cum** Temporal is followed by the past tenses of the Indicative to *define* or *date* the time of the action of the main verb (purely temporal).

tum, cum rēs permultī amiserant, scīmus fidem concidisse, *at that time, when very many had lost their property, we know that credit failed.*

3. When referring to *present* time, **Cum** Temporal is regularly followed by the Present Indicative ; when referring to *future* time, by the Future or Future Perfect Indicative.

cum vēneris, cognōscēs, *when you come, you will find out.*

4. When introducing a clause which refers to *exactly the same time* as that of the main verb, especially when the two verbs refer to the *same action*, **cum** is followed by the Indicative in the same tense as that of the main verb.

perdidimus hominem cum in apertum latrōcinium coniēcimus, *we ruined the fellow when we drove him into open insurrection.*

EXERCISES

225. Catiline III. 14-16. 1. After the state was freed from this great danger, the senate thanked

Cicero. 2. When Lentulus resigns the office of praetor, he will be punished as a private citizen. 3. While he was watching and toiling, he could endure hunger and thirst. 4. When the most wicked leader of the war had been arrested, all the hopes of the conspirators were shattered. 5. After the senate decreed that he should be put under arrest, we urged him to resign the praetorship. 6. I drove him from the city, before he should be killed. 7. When Catiline had been removed, I did not fear the rashness of Cethegus. 8. After nine men out of this great number had been punished, the purposes of the rest were reformed. 9. They were not freed from scruples until that had been done. 10. When you arrested these men, you removed all peril.

LESSON XXI

REVIEW

226. Catiline III. 17-20. In Catiline's absence, fellow-citizens, the gods have brought us so much assistance that we easily met and blocked all his plans, and the result was that¹ we did not have to fight with Catiline himself. If he had stayed at Rome, he would have prevented his men from deciding on the Saturnalia, though he could not have restrained them from threatening the destruction of the republic. When the soothsayers had assembled at² Rome, after (the statue of) Romulus was struck by lightning, they wished a larger statue of Jupiter to be made, before plans should be formed against the welfare of the city. While this statue was being erected, all these plans were brought to light. There is no doubt, therefore, that all this happened according to the design of the immortal gods.

¹ *the result was that, factum est ut.*

² *at;* in Latin 'to.'

LESSON XXII

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

Conditions of Fact. — § 143, 144.

Conditions of Possibility. — §§ 145, 146, 149.

Conditions Contrary to Fact. — §§ 147, 148.

Conditional Clauses of Comparison. — B. 307; A. & G. 524,
N. 2; H. 584, 1, 2.

Conditional Clauses of Comparison

227. These clauses are introduced by *ut sī, quasi, velut sī, tamquam sī*, and *tamquam*, all meaning *as if, as though*, and followed by the Subjunctive.

The Present or Perfect tense is used unless the sequence requires the Imperfect or Pluperfect. The clause is thus a Condition of Possibility, though in the corresponding English expression it is Contrary to Fact.

hī aedificant, tamquam beātī sint, these men are building houses as if they were wealthy.

crūdēlitātem horrēbant, velut sī cōram adesset, they dreaded his cruelty just as if he were (or had been) present in person.

EXERCISES

228. Catiline III. 21-24. 1. Had not the gods controlled all things, the conspirators would not have been brought into the temple of Concord on that day. 2. If I say that I have opposed them, I shall be taking too much credit. 3. We see that all these matters are being directed just as if the gods were present in person. 4. If Lentulus should intrust such important matters to barbarians, he would be bereft of reason. 5. If they were attempting to bring destructive fire upon our houses and the shrines of the gods, they would deserve even greater punishment. 6. If a thanksgiving has been appointed, let us celebrate those days. 7. The Gauls preferred the safety of the Romans to their own advantage, just as if they had not been able¹ to overcome them by saying nothing.

¹ *had not been able.* Does this refer to the same time as the principal verb or to previous time?

LESSON XXIII

CONCESSIONS, PROVISOS, INDIRECT QUESTIONS

Concessions. — § 129.

Provisos. — B. 310; A. & G. 528; H. 587.

Indirect Questions. — §§ 24-29.

Provisos

229. *Dum, modo, dummodo, provided, if only,* introduce a Proviso, and take the Present or Imperfect Subjunctive, according to the Sequence of Tenses. The negative is *nē*.

ōderint dum metuant, let them hate, provided they fear.

Oftentimes these clauses clearly imply a *wish*, either on the part of the principal subject or of the speaker.

dīcātur ēiectus ā mē dum modo eat in exsilium, let them say that I drove him into exile, if only he goes.

EXERCISES

230. *Catiline III.* 25-29. 1. You know, fellow-citizens, what sort of war Catiline is now waging

against¹ the republic, and how much of the city he thinks will be left. 2. We can settle all these quarrels by peaceful conciliation, provided they do not tend to destroy the republic. 3. Although every attack of these men has been turned against me alone, it is nevertheless my purpose always to assail these enemies here at home. 4. I wish no mark of honor, no memorial of praise, if only my triumphs have a place in your memory. 5. It is your business to see that those whom I have conquered do not harm me, though the republic itself will defend me. 6. You will have to consider in what situation you wish me to be, and to provide that we shall have² a lasting peace.

¹ *against*. Note the preposition in Latin.

² *have*; in Latin, '*be in*.'

LESSON XXIV

REVIEW

231. Catiline IV. 1-3. Cicero saw that the senators were anxious not only in regard to their own danger but also in regard to the safety of the consul. Although their good-will was pleasing to him, he urged them to forget him, and to consider in what way the honor and safety of the Roman people could be secured. He was glad to endure every hardship, provided only that, through his efforts, the state might be free from danger.

Lentulus thought that his name was destined for the destruction of the state, and would have rejoiced if some violence had crushed the consul, and all good citizens had perished with him. Cicero was moved by all this, but to the end that he might rescue Italy from disaster, and he consulted for the safety of the city, just as if he himself were free from all danger.

LESSON XXV

INDIRECT DISCOURSE, REGULAR AND IMPLIED. SUBJUNCTIVE OF ATTRACTION

Indirect Discourse. — §§ 43-45, 49-52, 149; B. 315, 316; A. & G. 586-588; H. 642. 2, 3, 4.

Implied Indirect Discourse. — B. 323; A. & G. 540. 2, 592; H. 649, I.

Subjunctive of Attraction. — B. 324; A. & G. 593; H. 652.

Indirect Discourse

232. The discussion of Statements and Subordinate Clauses in Indirect Discourse has been given in §§ 43-45, 49-52.

Real Questions are put in the Subjunctive in Indirect Discourse.

(respondit) *quid sibi vellet? cūr in suās possessionēs venīret?* (*he replied*) *what were his intentions? why did he come into his domain?*

233. Rhetorical Questions, which are asked only for effect, and are equivalent to emphatic *statements*, regularly take the Infinitive in Indirect Discourse.

num recentium iniūriārum memoriam (sē) dēpōnere posse? *could he forget the recent wrongs?*

234. All Imperatives, as well as Hortatory and Optative Subjunctives, appear as Subjunctives in Indirect Discourse. The negative is *nē*.

nē suae virtūtī tribueret, *let him not attribute it to his own valor.*

Conditions in Indirect Discourse

235. Present and Past Conditions of Fact in Indirect Discourse require no special comment.

Future Conditions in Indirect Discourse are discussed in § 149.

When Contrary to Fact Conditions are put into Indirect Discourse, the Protasis remains unchanged; if the Apodosis of either Present or Past Condition is in the Active Voice, the verb becomes, when possible, an Infinitive in *-ūrus fuisse*. If the verb has no Future Active Participle, or if it is in the Passive Voice, it takes the form *futūrum fuisse ut* and the Imperfect Subjunctive. This last form, and the Present Contrary to Fact Condition in Indirect Discourse are very rarely found.

Caesarem (sē) arbitrārī profectum in Itāliam; neque aliter Carnūtēs interficiendī Tasgetī cōnsilium fuisse captūrōs, (*he said*) *he thought Caesar had started for Italy; otherwise the Carnutes would not have formed their design of killing Tasgetius.*

Implied Indirect Discourse

236. A Subordinate Clause that is *part of something said or thought by another* is put in the Subjunctive even if its *indirect* character is merely implied.

sī sēsē interficī nōllent, arma pōnere iussērunt, they ordered them to lay down their arms, if they did not wish to be killed.

This usage includes Subordinate Clauses in Purposes, in Indirect Commands after *iubeō, imperō*, etc., and in Indirect Questions, as well as the Subjunctive with *quod* Causal (§ 126).

Subjunctive of Attraction

237. In *rare* cases, a clause depending on a Subjunctive Clause will itself take the Subjunctive, if regarded as an integral part of that clause.

cum exercitūs permagnōs quibuscumque ex gentibus potuisset comparāset, when he had secured very large armies from whatever tribes he could.

EXERCISES

238. Catiline IV. 4-7. 1. The defendants admitted that they sent for Catiline, and that the letters which we held were written by them. 2. The senate thanked Cicero in exceptional terms, because this conspiracy had been exposed through his watchfulness and ability. 3. Cicero declared that they ought to

come to a decision, and not¹ delay longer. Why did they think that few were implicated in the conspiracy? Let them crush it at once. 4. Caesar ordered them to be distributed among those municipal towns which were willing to receive them, and proposed² a severe penalty if they escaped. 5. After Cicero had said that no one would be left to lament the downfall of the city, if these men were not put in custody, the senate decreed that Lentulus should resign the praetorship. 6. He said he would not have done this if he had seen me.

¹ *and not*, **neque**.

² *proposed*, etc. Note the first few lines in § 8 of the text.

LESSON XXVI

INFINITIVES

Infinitive as Subject. — B. 327, 330; A. & G. 452. 1, 454, 455; H. 612. 3, 615.

Infinitive as Object. — B. 328. 1, 2, 331; A. & G. 456, 459; H. 607, 608. 4, 613. 1-3.

239. The Infinitive is a Verbal Noun, and may be used, with or without its Subject Accusative, as the *subject* or *object* of a verb.

Infinitive as Subject

The Infinitive is frequently found as *subject* with *esse* and various Impersonal verbs, especially with

aequum est	} <i>it is right.</i>	oportet, <i>it is proper</i>
iūstum est		(<i>ought</i>).
fās est		interest, <i>it concerns, is</i>
nefās est, <i>it is wrong.</i>		<i>of interest.</i>
turpe est, <i>it is disgraceful.</i>		placet, <i>it pleases, seems</i>
vērūm est, <i>it is true.</i>		<i>best.</i>
falsum est, <i>it is false.</i>		libet, <i>it pleases.</i>
apertum est	} <i>it is clear.</i>	licet, <i>it is permitted.</i>
manifestum est		cōnstat, <i>it is evident.</i>
opus est	} <i>it is necessary</i>	praestat, <i>it is better.</i>
necesse est		puDET, <i>it shames.</i>

With most of these expressions, the Infinitive has an Accusative Subject, expressed or understood. With *licet*, the *person to whom permission is given*, if expressed, is put in the Dative; and the Accusative Subject of the Infinitive, if it would refer to the same person, is omitted. Similarly, with *placet* and *libet*, the *person pleased*, if expressed, is put in the Dative; and the Accusative Subject, if referring to the same person, is omitted.

petēbat ut sibi discēdere licēret, he begged to be allowed to depart.

cum placēret summīs cīvitatīs virīs litterās aperīrī, though it seemed best to the most eminent men of the state that the letters be opened.

ad mortem tē dūcī iam prīdem oportēbat, you ought to have been put to death long ago.

quicquam altius quō mihi libeat ascendere, any higher position to which I wish to climb.

240. Some of these verbs occasionally take a Subjunctive, often without *ut*, but the Infinitive is much more common.

licet intellegātis, you may know.

huīc tū inserviās oportet, you ought to work for this.

Complementary Infinitive

241. The Infinitive *without* Subject Accusative is used with many verbs to complete their meaning.

Some of the commoner verbs which take this Complementary Infinitive are :

possum, <i>be able.</i>	dēbeō, <i>ought.</i>
volō, <i>wish.</i>	cupiō, <i>desire.</i>
mālō, <i>prefer.</i>	incipiō, <i>begin.</i>
nōlō, <i>be unwilling.</i>	coepī, <i>began.</i>
statuō	cōnor, <i>try.</i>
cōstituō	audeō, <i>dare.</i>
dēcernō	contendō
cōnsuēscō, <i>become accus-</i>	properō
<i>tomed.</i>	dubitō, <i>hesitate.</i>
soleō, <i>be accustomed.</i>	

quis latrō invenīrī potest? *what robber can be found?*

dēbēbit esse in honōre, *he ought to be (held) in honor.*

deōrum templīs fūnestōs ignīs inferre cōnātī sunt, *they have attempted to bring deadly fire upon the temples of the gods.*

Object Infinitive with Subject Accusative

242. 1. The Infinitive with Subject Accusative is used, as the *object* of a verb, most frequently in Indirect Discourse. (§ 44.)

2. The Infinitive with Subject Accusative is used as the object of iubeō, *order*, vetō, *forbid*, cōgō, *compel*, patior, *sinō*, *permit*; also with cupiō, *desire*, volō, *wish*, and compounds of volō, when the

subject of the Infinitive is *different* from that of the main verb. When the subject is the *same*, it is sometimes repeated as a Reflexive, but more often the Complementary Infinitive is used.

cupiō { mē esse clēmētem } *I desire to be merciful.*
esse clēmēns

exīre ex urbe iubet cōnsul hostem, *the consul orders a (public) enemy to leave the city.*

cursum ōtiōsum vītāe saluum esse volunt, *they wish the peaceful course of their life to be safe.*

3. When iubeō, vetō, and cōgō (*compel*) are used in the Passive, they take a Complementary Infinitive. (§ 241) This is also true for verbs of Saying and Thinking, but *only in the present system.*

hī centum pāgōs habēre dīcuntur, *these people are said to have a hundred cantons.*

simul atque īre in exsilium iussus est, pāruit, īvit, *as soon as he was ordered to go into exile, he obeyed and went.*

4. Volō and mālō sometimes take the Subjunctive, usually without ut.

hōs māllem sēcum suōs mīlitēs ēdūxisset, *I should prefer that he had taken out with him these men as his soldiers.*

EXERCISES

243. Catiline IV. 8-10. 1. Who can comfort those from whom hope has been taken away? 2. Beg-

gary must follow confiscation of property. 3. We ought not to remove the dread of punishment from those who have attempted to plot the destruction of the city. 4. He ordered them to look out for the safety of the people. 5. It is necessary that the punishment be worthy of the crime. 6. We cannot allow them to be called friends of the people.¹ 7. Not even the senate is allowed to lighten the punishment of these wicked men. 8. Cicero said that some one did not dare to express his opinion. 9. We all wish those who are enemies of the state to be put under guard.

¹ *friends of the people.* Use an adjective.

LESSON XXVII

REVIEW

244. Catiline IV. 11-13. Though Cicero seemed to be severe against these bitter enemies of the state, he was really¹ animated by kindness, for he knew that if he was merciful in the case of these men, he would be thought² cruel to his native land; but a few years later,³ Cicero himself was driven into exile, on the ground that he had put Roman⁴ citizens to death. Some⁵ feared the charge of cruelty if they adopted the proposal of Silanus, but it was much more to be feared that if they were not severe, they would be considered too merciful, and Cicero knew that if these men were permitted to escape,⁶ he could⁷ not save the city, the light of the whole world. And so he did what we think he would not have done if he had been wiser.⁸

¹ *really*, *vērē*.

² *would be thought*, § 73. 2.

³ *a few years later*, § 71.

⁴ *Roman*, § 251. *i*.

⁵ *some*; in Latin, '*there were some who*.'

⁶ *escape*, *effugiō*.

⁷ *could*; *possum* has no Future Infinitive. The Present Infinitive is regularly used instead, but **fore ut** with the Subjunctive is occasionally found.

⁸ *wise*, *sapiēns*.

LESSON XXVIII

PARTICIPLES. GERUND AND GERUNDIVE

Tenses of Participles.—B. 336. 1-5; A. & G. 489, 491, 493; H. 640. 1, 4.

Adjective Uses of Participles.—B. 337. 1-3, 5, 7; A. & G. 494-496; H. 638, 639.

Gerund and Gerundive.—§§ 92-95.

Periphrastic Conjugations.—§§ 98-101.

Tenses of Participles

245. 1. Participles are Verbal Adjectives, and agree with Substantives. They denote Present, Past, or Future time, in reference to the time of the verb of the clause in which they stand; and their tenses are used with greater exactness than in English. The Present Participle should be used only to express action taking place at the same time as that of the verb in its clause. In English, the Present Participle is often used where the Latin Perfect is required.

hīs rēbus cognitīs discessit, learning of these matters, he departed.

2. The Latin lacks the Perfect Active Participle. The idea may be expressed by the Perfect

Participle of a Deponent verb, by a Dependent Clause, usually Temporal (§§ 110, 111), or by the Ablative Absolute (§§ 56, 57).

haec cōnspici-	}	profectus est	}	having perceived this (or, per- ceiving this), he started out.
tus				
cum haec cōn-				
spexisset				
hīs rēbus cōn-	}			
spectīs				

3. The Perfect Participles of a few Deponent Verbs are used with a *present* meaning: *arbitrātus*, *thinking*; *ausus*, *daring*; *veritus*, *fearing*.

Adjective Uses of Participles

246. The Present and Perfect Participles may be used attributively as Adjectives, and often express such relations as Time, Cause, Manner, Means, Concession, or some Attendant Circumstance.

videor vidēre hanc urbem concidentem, *I seem to see the city falling*.

itaque tantum victus efficere potuit, *and so he, though conquered, was able to accomplish so much*.

Special Uses of the Gerundive

247. 1. With *cūrō*, *care for*, *locō*, *contract for*, and verbs of *giving* or *assigning*, the Gerundive, in agreement with the object of the verb, is used to express purpose.

illud signum conlocandum cōsulēs locāvērunt, *the consuls contracted for the erection of that statue.*

hīc nōs trucidandōs Cethēgō attribuit, *this man assigns us to Cethegus to be murdered.*

2. With the Genitives **meī, tuī, suī, nostrī, vestrī**, the Gerundive has the same ending, **ī**, without regard to Gender or Number.

multī prīncipēs cīvitātis Rōmā nōn suī cōnservandī causā profūgērunt, *many of the leading men of the state fled from Rome, but not for the purpose of saving themselves.*

EXERCISES

248. Catiline IV. 14-16. 1. We see all men holding the same opinion.¹ 2. Having been recalled from a dissension of many years' standing, they vie with you in devotion to the state. 3. We must not consider² them wicked citizens, but most bitter enemies. 4. Having made all things ready, I shall be able to carry out the measures which you have decided on to-day. 5. Men of all ranks have come together with a desire for³ defending themselves. 6. What citizen is there to whom liberty is⁴ not dear? 7. Never since the founding of the city have we seen all men restored to harmony. 8. They see that they must perish, and they wish all to perish with them. 9. Let us keep forever in the state this union which has been established in my con-

sulship. 10. Having attained the good fortune of citizenship, the freedmen also have been aroused to defend the safety of the state.

¹ *holding the same opinion; in Latin, 'thinking the same (thing).'*

² *consider; in Latin, 'hold in the number of.'*

³ *desire for, § 181.*

⁴ *is, § 134.*

LESSON XXIX

SUPINE, EXPRESSIONS OF PURPOSE, ORDER

Supine. — § 96.

Expressions of Purpose. — § 97.

Order. — B. 348-351 ; A. & G. 595-601 ; H. 663-680.

Expressions of Purpose

249. The five ways of expressing Purpose, as illustrated in § 97, are as follows :

1. **Ut** with the Subjunctive.
2. **Quī** with the Subjunctive.
3. Genitive Gerund or Gerundive with **causā**.
4. **Ad** with Accusative Gerund or Gerundive.
5. Supine.

Where the verb has a *plural object*, there is a sixth possibility, the Genitive Gerund with a Plural Object. This occurs about as often in Caesar as its equivalent, the Genitive Plural Gerundive, but both are rarely found and should be avoided.* Do not use the Genitive Gerund with a *singular object*.

* In Caesar's "Gallic War" and "Civil War" there are ninety-six Genitive Singular Gerundives, eight Genitive Plural Gerundives, seven Genitive Gerunds with Plural Objects, and no other instance of a Gerund with an Object.

Order of Words in a Sentence

250. In what may be called the *regular* arrangement of a Latin sentence, the Subject, followed by its modifiers, stands at the beginning of the sentence, and the Predicate, preceded by its modifiers, at the end.

Dārēus rēx Scythīs bellum īferre dēcrēvit, Darius, the king, decided to make war on the Scythians.

But for the sake of emphasis, this order is often abandoned, and the emphatic word or phrase is placed at the beginning of the sentence, or less frequently, at the end.

īdem fēcit M. Antōnius, the very same thing was done by Mark Antony.

Special Usages

251. (a) A Genitive regularly follows its noun.

rēx Germānōrum, king of the Germans.

(b) The Vocative should never come first in a sentence, except for special emphasis.

quā rē, patrēs cōnscriptī, cōnsulite vōbīs, therefore, conscript fathers, look out for yourselves.

M. Tullī, quid agis? Marcus Tullius, what are you doing?

(c) Certain Adjectives, such as **prīmus, medius, extrēmus, summus, īmus, reliquus**, often refer to a

part only of the noun they modify. In such a use the Adjective regularly precedes the Noun.

media urbs, *the middle of the city.*

extrēmae fossae, *the ends of the ditches.*

(*d*) Adverbs regularly come just before the words they modify. This always holds true for **nōn**, when it modifies a single word.

(*e*) The forms of **sum** are generally unimportant words, and come in the middle of the sentence, as in English.

ēius bellī haec fuit causa, *the cause of this war was as follows.*

(*f*) A Preposition regularly precedes its Noun; but when there is a modifying Adjective, it often comes before the Preposition.

summā cum laude, *with the highest credit.*

quā dē causā, *for this reason.*

(*g*) A Relative regularly stands first in its clause, except a Relative Substantive after a Preposition.

urbs in quā vīvit, *the city in which he lives.*

This rule applies also to a Demonstrative which refers to some part of the preceding sentence.

(*h*) **Autem**, *moreover*, **enim**, *for*, **vērō**, *but*, **quoque**, *also*, regularly stand in the *second* place in the sentence, sometimes in the *third*; **igitur**, *therefore*,

usually *second*. With *nē . . . quidem*, *not even*, the emphatic word comes between.

(i) The adjective **Rōmānus** regularly follows its noun. The ablative **causā**, and the rarer **grātiā**, *for the sake*, always follow their Genitives.

populus Rōmānus, *the Roman people*.

pācis causā, *for the sake of peace*.

EXERCISES

252. Catiline IV. 17-20. 1. All ranks were stirred by the crime of these men, and sent an army against Catiline to save the republic.¹ 2. Most of those who are in the shops, which are in the middle of the city, are very great lovers of peace. 3. Both you and I,² fellow-citizens, and the Roman people as a whole, are of one and the same opinion³ in regard to the public welfare. 4. You must, this night, provide that this empire, founded with so great an effort and established with the highest courage, shall not hereafter be destroyed. 5. Moreover, this tool of Lentulus, (a man) of wretched condition and abandoned purpose, has been sent into the midst of the shops for the purpose of setting fire to the city.

¹ *to save the republic*. Express in all possible ways.

² *you and I*; in Latin, '*I and you*.'

³ *opinion*, §§ 248 note 1; 205.

LESSON XXX

REVIEW

253. Catiline IV. 21-24. There were many great Roman generals whose deeds of valor were remarkable. They fought not for the sake of saving themselves, but to free their country from danger, and we ought to regard them as worthy of exceptional honor.¹ But Cicero must be placed before them all, for to see that victors have a place to which they may return is surely a greater thing than to open new provinces.

Cicero had to carry on an endless warfare with ruined citizens, who, after² they had once been led astray by some madness, could not be held in check by any force or favor. In return for these services,³ Cicero asked his fellow-citizens to preserve his son from danger, and to remember that he was the son of the man who had devoted⁴ himself to preserving the liberty of the state.

¹ *honor*, § 200.

² *after, etc.* Express by a participle clause.

³ *services*; in Latin, '*things*.'

⁴ *devote*, *cōnferō*.

EXERCISES ON POMPEY'S COMMAND AND ON ARCHIAS

(These exercises follow the same systematic presentation of grammatical principles as those based on the four Catilinarian Orations, pages 117-180, and may be used in their stead.)

Agreement of Adjectives and Pronouns

(See pages 116, 117)

254. Pompey's Command, 1-6. (A) 1. In this place, fellow-citizens, I shall always dare to defend your cause. 2. This province, which is our surest help in war, must be defended with the greatest zeal. 3. Your allies and revenues and the safety of many citizens are at stake in this war. 4. Nobody thinks that the man who has taken Lucullus's place is well enough prepared to conquer Mithridates. 5. It is not difficult to inspire in you¹ a zeal for carrying on this great war. 6. Pompey's ability is of such a kind as to be sought out and demanded by everybody. 7. We must wage a long and serious war with Mithridates, the most powerful king of Asia. 8. Not only the great possessions of Roman knights, but also many citizens themselves, are now in the power of the enemy.

¹ *stir you up to.*

(B) Since I have shown you, fellow-citizens, both what you ought to do and how you ought to do it, I

must now speak in regard to the character of the war; for a war in which the large interests of many citizens and the surest revenues of the Roman people are at stake¹ must be carried on with the greatest zeal and courage, and cannot be neglected without great danger.

¹ § 134.

Pronouns

(See pages 119, 120)

255. Pompey's Command, 7-11. (A) 1. The Roman people, who have always been eager for glory, will wipe out that stain. 2. Who of us can allow this king with whom our commanders are waging war to go unpunished? 3. They knew that he was not preparing forces to make¹ war on his neighbors. 4. Their commander so managed matters in Spain, that danger in that section was removed. 5. He will not conceal himself in Pontus, but will prepare new armies and fleets. 6. Certain² of our generals have been treated unjustly. 7. Our citizens have been murdered in Asia by the same king who has carried on many serious wars with us. 8. If any one has celebrated a triumph over Mithridates, he ought to be praised. 9. What can we do to avert the danger of which I am speaking? 10. The punishment which he has received is not worthy of his crime. 11. The war which is being carried on in Spain in accordance with his plan is very dangerous.

¹ § 33.

² § 46.

(B) It is a deep stain on the name of the Roman people that Mithridates, who has murdered so many Roman citizens, has as yet received no punishment worthy of his crime. Your ancestors did not allow their merchants to be unjustly treated, and wished to destroy Corinth because the rights of envoys had been encroached upon. Shall we allow Mithridates to go unpunished, who has put to death thousands of Roman citizens?

Genitive

(See pages 122, 123)

256. Pompey's Command, 12-16. (A) 1. The arrival of our forces in the cities of the allies is like an assault of the enemy. 2. No one of our commanders has been able to defend the safety of our friends in the provinces. 3. Men of this sort cannot check the attacks of the enemy. 4. We have a commander, expert in war and most eager for the safety of his country. 5. It is the part of wisdom to keep this province from fear of disaster. 6. Certain of our friends and allies are in great danger, and cannot defend themselves from the enemy. 7. All of our commanders are not like Pompey, whom the allies are glad to receive in their cities. 8. This province, which you are defending from danger, is of great size. 9. We are not ignorant of the harm which fear of disaster brings.

(B) Not only in the provinces and cities of the allies does fear of disaster cause loss, but also in our

own towns and cities. It is therefore the part of wisdom to see to it that our armies protect our provinces and allies from fear of disaster. Our largest revenues are in danger, and we cannot ourselves be safe, unless we protect both those who collect and those who pay them.

Genitive with Verbs

(See pages 125, 126)

257. Pompey's Command, 17-21. (A) 1. Are you not ashamed of these dangers to the republic, when you see¹ that your fellow-citizens cannot be kept from disaster, and that finances in Asia are going to destruction? 2. If you do not defend² the province from this danger, you will be charged with the disaster into which we are now being drawn. 3. It deeply concerns this system of finances, which exists here at Rome, that many men should not lose their great fortunes invested in Asia, and that the largest revenues of the Roman people should be defended. 4. I think you all remember the ability and persistence of Lucullus, and know how great forces of the enemy he destroyed. 5. It is of very little importance to us, when the revenues have been lost, to recover these cities of Pontus and Cappadocia later on. 6. In order that you all may see that the war must be carried on, I will speak briefly of its magnitude.

¹ § 224. 1.

² § 144.

(B) If we have always considered the tax collectors most honorable men, we must take special pains that they shall not lose all their property, and that the large number of citizens who are now in Asia shall be kept from this same danger. For you all surely know that you ought to look out for¹ the interests of these men, and that the ruin of many is of no little concern to the public welfare.

¹ See § 17 of the Latin text.

Dative

(See pages 129, 130)

258. Pompey's Command, 22-26. (A) 1. We ought to inspire fear in those tribes which have never been attacked by the Roman people. 2. The collection of all these beautiful objects was a great hindrance to Lucullus. 3. Mithridates now has in Asia a very great army and large auxiliary forces. 4. If Lucullus had remedied these evils, he would have been able to accomplish in large degree what we never dared hope for. 5. Lucullus had to hand over to Glabrio a large part of his forces, and to muster out the rest. 6. The Romans were accustomed to set a limit to the length of military command, and so a new general was compelled to take up the war. 7. Mithridates, after being conquered, had again¹ made war on the Roman people, and was now making an attack on the victorious army. 8. You must put in charge of² this war a man who is³ not distrustful of his own success, and cannot easily be moved by fear of disaster.

¹ *again, iterum.* ² See § 27 of the Latin text. ³ § 134.

(B) While Mithridates was fleeing in great fear, and our men were swiftly pursuing him, he arrived in the kingdom of Tigranes, who is said to have encouraged him, though Mithridates was without confidence in his own cause, and to have aided him with large additional forces. For kings, and those who live in a kingdom, usually consider the name of king great and holy.

Accusative and Ablative

(See pages 131, 132)

259. Pompey's Command, 27-30. (A) 1. We shall appoint him as commander for this great and dangerous war. 2. It remains for me to speak in regard to a commander who has been trained from his boyhood in military discipline. 3. Italy, which was oppressed by a most disgraceful civil war, asked him for aid. 4. Who has contended with an enemy more often than Pompey? 5. Not the orders of others but his own commands have trained him for many years to a knowledge of most varied kinds of warfare. 6. All this proves that he is a man who is much more experienced in war than other commanders. 7. All, both citizens and allies, ask us for this man, in whom are all the good qualities of a commander. 8. It is to the interest of our allies that we put a brave and upright man in charge of the war.

(B) No one can find language worthy of the merit of Pompey, for we know that all the good qualities

of a general exist in him. Of all our commanders who have fought either in the provinces or in Italy, he is the most experienced, and we shall never repent, if we choose as commander this man, who has often delivered us from the dangers of war by his bravery and good luck.

Ablative

(See pages 135, 136)

260. Pompey's Command, 31-34. (A) 1. For many years they had not been able to defend their allies with their fleets. 2. There is need of this courage which we see in Pompey. 3. This long-continued war with the pirates has been finished with great speed, and the sea is safe for our merchants. 4. Pompey is a man of such courage that he can accomplish more than other commanders. 5. Our allies are worthy of protection in this war which is being waged against them. 6. For all these reasons, we judge that the war has been finished. 7. We cannot use those harbors through which we draw the breath of life. 8. In every respect, the war with the pirates was dishonorable and dangerous. 9. For this reason even our own merchants could not sail, except in the dead of winter. 10. The pirates captured envoys of the Roman people, plundered their ports, and sunk the fleet which a consul commanded.

(B) We have a commander of incredible valor, who was able to finish the war by which all nations were being overwhelmed. For many years the sea

had been so crowded with pirates that no revenue was safe, that cities were plundered under the very eye of the praetor, and harbors were deserted through fear. Now the entire sea is free from pirates, and Pompey has done, in a short time, what other generals could not accomplish in many years.

Ablative Absolute. Time and Place

(See page 137)

(Use the Ablative Absolute when possible.)

261. Pompey's Command, 35-39. (A) 1. After taking up this war in early spring and setting out from Brundisium, Pompey overcame all the pirates in a very short time and came home with his army. 2. You ought to know, fellow-citizens, that certain generals have left at interest in Rome the money which they had taken from the treasury to carry on war in Cilicia. 3. The Cretans, having sent ambassadors to Pompey in Pamphylia,¹ were ordered to send hostages to Rome. 4. A few years before, many states of the allies had been ruined by Roman armies. 5. For many years these armies marched through the towns of Roman citizens and brought great disaster. 6. When he had equipped Italy and Greece with strong garrisons, he set out from home against the pirates. 7. How many miles do you think Pompey has marched in recent years through the lands of our citizens and allies?

¹ Look out for the case.

(B) Now that this great war, so widespread and so long continued, had been ended in so short a time, the Roman people thought that Pompey had¹ all the exceptional qualities which should be sought for in a great and ideal commander. They understood these better from a comparison with² certain other generals, who were men of great greed, and could not judge others severely because they did not wish others to be severe judges of them.

¹ See Latin text, § 36.

² of.

Verbs: Agreement, Voice, Tense. Sequence of Tenses. Direct Questions

(See pages 139-142)

262. Pompey's Command, 40-43. (A) 1. Both you and I, fellow-citizens, know that Pompey was not turned aside from his intended course by any paintings or statues. 2. Once upon a time there were Romans of such self-restraint that foreign nations wished to be subject to them. 3. Pompey is so strong in prestige, also, that no one can doubt that this war ought to be put in his charge. 4. Is there any one who does not know what our allies think of this man and why his enemies have loved him? 5. Men have been led to fear and hate our generals by their reputation and achievements. 6. Do we not know that all his enemies have considered his good faith most inviolate? 7. Do they despise us for our kindness or fear us because of our prestige?

8. It is hard to say whether he is stronger in prestige or in weight of utterance.

(*B*) Since Pompey has such self-restraint that everybody looks upon him as one sent from heaven, and since he is not hindered by the pleasures and enjoyments that usually delay others, we ought not to doubt that all our allies of every sort have loved and cherished his kindness, and that the glory of his power is bringing relief to all nations.

Subjunctive in Independent Clauses

(See page 143)

263. Pompey's Command, 44-47. (*A*) 1. Let us put him in charge of this war, which has been threatening Asia for a long time. 2. Why should they prefer to consider him a spy rather than an envoy? 3. Would that we had a stronger guard in the province! 4. Do not hesitate to defend the cities of your allies with armies and fleets. 5. Let them not say more about the prestige of other generals who have been sent to these regions. 6. Demand Pompey as commander, if you wish to save your revenues. 7. Do not entrust armies to a commander who can with difficulty restrain his own soldiers. 8. Let us use moderation in speaking of the good luck of this man whom we are now discussing. 9. Would that these envoys had come to Pompey and surrendered to him!

(*B*) The prestige of our generals has great weight in war, and unless we wish to lose both provinces and

revenues, let us send to this war a commander who possesses this quality. Many examples can be cited which will prove that the enemy and our allies are influenced no less by the reputation of our commanders than by the size of our armies.

Clauses of Characteristic and Purpose

(See page 146)

264. **Pompey's Command, 48-52.** (A) 1. Pompey is a suitable man to be chosen and sent to the war at this time. 2. I said this, so that the great advantage which the immortal gods had granted us might not be disregarded. 3. He is the only man who can manage this war with the greatest care. 4. Let us send him to these regions to preserve and build up our power. 5. Those who have spoken against him are unworthy to be regarded as patriotic citizens. 6. Everything ought to be entrusted to Pompey, since he has managed matters at home and in the field with the greatest good fortune. 7. For the sake of the common safety as well as for his own sake, we shall appoint him to carry on the war with the pirates. 8. There are some men to whom the gods have granted that which others have not dared hope for.

(B) There are at Rome some patriotic men who do not think that so much power should be given to one man. They confess that Pompey possesses extraordinary courage and remarkable good fortune, and that all the good qualities of a commander¹ have been

bestowed on him by the gods. Why should they hesitate to put in charge of this important war the only man whom citizens and allies greatly desire?

¹ *of a commander.* See Latin text, § 29.

Substantive Clauses of Desire

(See page 148)

265. Pompey's Command, 53-57. (A) 1. Hortensius urged the Romans not to put everything in the hands of Pompey alone. 2. If the influence of Hortensius had had great weight with the Roman people, they would not have demanded that Pompey be sent against the pirates. 3. They were afraid that if the pirates were not conquered they themselves would be kept from all public communication with the provinces. 4. They decided, therefore, that Pompey should carry on this war, and wished him to take Gabinus with him as a lieutenant. 5. They were not at all afraid that they would not at last in reality rule over all nations on land and sea. 6. Other men have preferred to plunder the provinces rather than to free us from disgrace and to establish safety for all nations. 7. Ought not Roman citizens to be ashamed to yield to the pirates on all the seas?

(B) Did we have supreme command at that time, fellow-citizens, when we could not defend our own harbors and seacoasts, and the pirates were robbing our allies and closing all the seas against us? Or did you think that in one year we should establish peace

for all nations and make the pirates fear that we could be a match for them?

Clauses of Result. Verbs of Hindering, Restraining, Doubting

(See page 151)

266. Pompey's Command, 58-61. (A) 1. Nothing shall keep me from asking you, fellow-citizens, to put all your hopes in Gneius Pompey alone. 2. For he is a man of so great ability that many unusual things have been done in his case. 3. If the senate will put all power in Pompey's hands, the result will be that he will end the war and bring home his army victorious. 4. If they hesitate, we will make them give him the command and the army which he wishes. 5. There is nothing so difficult or so unheard of that he cannot accomplish it by his own ability, relying upon your assistance. 6. Let no one doubt that Pompey will carry on this war with exceptional integrity and ability. 7. I shall not inquire here how many wars he has waged, or in what way he kept his enemies from overcoming him.

(B) Although Catulus is a man of great authority and position, on this question I absolutely disagree with him, and shall endeavor to make you also disagree, for he thinks that nothing new should be done, contrary to ancestral custom and example, and that we ought to follow precedent more than expediency, and not suit our plans to changed conditions.

Temporal Clauses

(See pages 153, 154)

267. Pompey's Command, 62-65. (A) 1. After they saw that he had brought safety to the whole earth, they confessed that they must obey the judgment of the Roman people. 2. He was elected praetor before he could lawfully hold any other office. 3. When the commanders of the Roman people were carrying on war in the provinces, it was difficult for them to think of nothing but the enemy. 4. We sent him with an army into Asia, before all the rich cities should be plundered. 5. He was put in charge of the war, while this was being done. 6. As soon as he attempted to control their plans, they said he was consulting too little for the interests of state. 7. He did not celebrate a triumph until this had been done. 8. When they saw the disasters which our commanders were bringing on the allies, they entrusted the duty of the two consuls to one young man.

(B) After Pompey had been put in charge of the war with the pirates, he conducted the campaign with great success both on land and sea, and all who had objected when he was selected for this war now confessed that he possessed all the good qualities which were required¹ in a commander, and was worthy to be entrusted² with our army.

¹ § 50.² § 217.

Conditional Sentences

(See page 157)

268. Pompey's Command, 66-71. (A) 1. If Pompey should be sent to this war, the allies would be glad to have him come into their cities. 2. If we do this, our allies will believe that we have a commander who can accomplish what he promises. 3. If they had heard the complaints of the allies, they would have conferred the whole power on one man. 4. If you have any one who is able to conquer the armies of the king, do not hesitate to send him against the enemy. 5. If I were doing this at the request of any one, I should be placing my own interests before the honor of the state. 6. If you appoint this man a second time, he will finish this affair with the same skill. 7. Our commanders made war on our friends in the provinces, just as if they were enemies.

(B) If this issue ought to be strengthened by the opinions of eminent men, let us not forget¹ that Servilius, Lentulus, Cassius, and many other men of extraordinary integrity, sanction the law. If we ought to consider what the allies think, we know that for many years they have hardly² been able to endure the greed of those whom we have sent to them with armies.

¹ *forget, obliviscor.*² *hardly, vix.*

EXERCISES ON ARCHIAS

Concessions, Provisos, Indirect Questions

(See page 159)

269. Archias, 1-6. (A) 1. I know from whom I received this training and encouragement, and, so far as in me lies, will bring him help. 2. I shall easily make you believe that Archias ought to be treated with the highest honor, if only you permit me to speak freely about this great and learned poet. 3. Although he was able to secure this citizenship through the favor of Lucullus, nevertheless he was considered worthy on his own account. 4. Provided he finds those who can give him interest and attention, he will be presented with great rewards and be considered worthy of recognition. 5. I wonder whether the men who showed favor to Archias and received him in their homes were anxious to hear something from him or merely¹ pretended (to be). 6. The whole family of the Luculli was very friendly to him, though he was at that time a mere youth.

¹ *merely, tantum.*

(B) Cicero was eager to help Archias as far as he could, because this man had been his leader in taking up this scheme of study. Though he did not know whether the judges were going to allow him to speak

freely about the pursuit of literature and culture, he was afraid that they would be surprised that he spoke in this way in behalf of a poet.

Indirect Discourse

(See pages 162-164)

270. Archias, 7-12. (A) 1. You all know that the records of Appius were kept very carelessly, and that all confidence in the records of Gabinius was destroyed by his conviction. 2. Metellus said he was disturbed because he had seen an erasure in one man's name. 3. Cicero thought that if the enemies of Archias said he had not been enrolled at Heraclia, the records of Metellus and the testimony of the Heraclian representatives would show that he was a citizen. 4. The law of Silvanus and Carbo gave citizenship to the citizens of allied states if they registered with the praetor within two months. 5. Cicero thought that Archias would not have made his will according to Roman laws or received the bequests of Roman citizens if he had not been a citizen himself. 6. Do you deny that he had a residence at Rome, when you know that he had already been at Rome for many years?

(B) Cicero said that he, and all who were devoted to the study of literature, were very much delighted with Archias, because he furnished them a place¹ where they could refresh their minds with study, and he thought he ought not to be ashamed if he relaxed

his mind with these same pursuits and devoted as much time to them as others took for banquets and gambling.

¹ *a place.* Omit.

Infinitives

(See pages 166-169)

271. Archias, 13-18. (A) 1. No one can blame me, if I devote to these pursuits as much time as I wish. 2. We ought not to subject ourselves to the daily attacks of wicked men. 3. Ennius did not hesitate to call poets sacred. 4. They are permitted to devote themselves to the study of literature. 5. They did not allow these examples to lie in darkness. 6. He ordered the poet to be recalled and to speak on those subjects which were being discussed. 7. It was necessary to assert this in regard to those men of whom we were speaking. 8. We all wish to imitate the examples which the Greek and Latin writers have left us. 9. It is not permitted me to assert this in regard to all. 10. We ought to admire the great men who have been influential because of their natural talent and training.

(B) We know that there are many eminent men who have not been educated, and yet have been distinguished because of their natural talent. The greatest men, however,¹ are those whose extraordinary talent has been trained by the most liberal studies. These studies are suited to all ages and all places, to adversity and prosperity, and for this reason no one ought to blame us, if we devote ourselves to them.

¹ *however, autem.*

Participles. Gerund and Gerundive

(See pages 172-174)

272. Archias, 19-24. (A) 1. We have seen this Archias devoting all his genius to making known the glory of the Roman people. 2. Having opened Pontus, our army put to flight a very large force of Armenians. 3. They fought not to make themselves famous, but to honor the name of the Roman people. 4. We ought not to reject a man who has been received into citizenship by many states. 5. We must not dishonor the poets, whose name has always been sacred. 6. We listen most willingly to the words of that one who best proclaims our worth. 7. Many books have been written for the purpose of spreading abroad the fame of great men. 8. He was about to describe in every detail the war which had been carried on with Mithridates.

(B) Our ancestors thought that man to be fortunate whose deeds were set forth by the poets, and for that reason they gladly received Ennius into citizenship, and said that he was worthy to be¹ honored by the whole Roman people. There were many nations which claimed Homer as their citizen after his death, because he was a poet. We ought to seek Archias while he is living, since he has celebrated the great deeds of our generals and the fame of the Roman people itself.

¹ to be, § 217.

Supine. Expressions of Purpose. Order

(See pages 176-179)

273. Archias, 25-32. (A) 1. I willingly admit to you that I am led on by a keen desire for glory, which night and day spurs me on. 2. If we did not think that some memory would be with us after death, we should break down¹ in the midst of our cares and struggles. 3. Brutus, a Roman general, sent men to adorn² his memorials and temples with the songs of his friend, Attius. 4. Do you not think, judges, that one who is so anxious for his own deeds to be described ought to cherish the name of poets? 5. For every good man desires no other prize but the everlasting memory of his name. 6. Cicero declared that he would take under his protection and relieve by his kindness this man, who had honored the achievements of the Roman people, and who belonged to that number who at all times and among all men had been considered sacred.

(B) If we were all led on by an honorable desire for praise, we should not wish to leave behind us many statues, the images of our bodies, but should much rather leave some representation of our minds and of our virtues, set forth by a man of great genius, for in this way will the memory of our name go on into all the future.

¹ *break down*; use passive voice.

² *to adorn*; express in all possible ways.

REVIEW EXERCISES

274. **Pompey's Command, 1-5.** Cicero had not before spoken from the Rostra,¹ although he knew that this path to honorable distinction was open to every worthy citizen² of Rome.³ He had, however, thought that he should⁴ devote all his time to defending⁵ his friends; and so uprightly had he been engaged in private suits that he had secured a most honorable reward. When he had been elected praetor, he easily understood what his friends thought of him; and decided that he ought to use his influence on behalf of those who had given him such honor. He was especially glad that he had to⁶ speak about the extraordinary merit of Pompey, for words could fail no one⁷ in such a cause. Two powerful kings were making war on the allies of the Roman people. The large properties of Roman knights were at stake, and all, both citizens and allies, demanded Pompey as commander for this war in Asia.

¹ *Rostra*, **Rōstra**, -ōrum.

² *every worthy citizen*. Note expression in text.

³ *of Rome*. Use an adjective.

⁴ *should*, § 106.

⁵ *to defending*, § 95.

⁶ *had to*, § 105.

⁷ *no one*. Dative with **dēsum**.

275. Pompey's Command, 6-10. Since we see what the issue is, let us consider what we must do. The glory of the Roman people, the safety of your allies, and our surest revenues are at stake. Your ancestors were eager for glory, and often fought that they might lack neither the sinews of war nor the embellishments of peace. There is, however, a deep stain on the name of the Roman people, which ought to be wiped out, in that¹ Mithridates, who on a single day, by a single order, put to death so many Roman citizens, has as yet received no punishment worthy of his crime.² Sulla and Murena both celebrated triumphs over Mithridates; but, though defeated,³ he still remains on his throne, and is preparing new fleets and armies to bring war, both by land and sea, upon you and your tributaries.

¹ *in that*, **quod**.

² *crime*, § 200.

³ *though defeated*, § 246.

276. Pompey's Command, 11-14. Our ancestors waged war with the Carthaginians in order not to permit those who had treated¹ their allies unjustly to go unpunished. Will you not follow up the murder² of all these Roman citizens? Our allies, whose lives are endangered, wish their welfare to be intrusted to Pompey alone; but now that³ you have sent some one else, they do not dare to ask for him openly. The others who have gone out into the provinces are not very different from enemies, but Pompey surpasses all men in self-restraint and kindness. Your largest revenues, also, are endangered, for the fields of Asia

are very rich, and products of great variety are exported from that province. You must, therefore, defend it from the attacks of these two kings who are threatening you and your allies.

¹ *had treated*, §§ 134, 236.

² *murder, etc.* Note text.

³ *now that, cum.*

277. Pompey's Command, 15-19. We know that when disaster comes, then loss is caused, but let us¹ not forget² that fear of loss often brings disaster. It is, therefore, the part of wisdom to keep from fear of disaster those who pay and those who collect the taxes. Do you think that it is of slight importance³ for the tax-gatherers in Asia to lose the income of an entire year? Loss to citizens⁴ cannot be separated from disaster to the state; and you ought, therefore, to have a care for⁵ the property of those honorable men who have invested large fortunes in Asia, since the revenues, which they collect, are the sinews of the state. If payment should be suspended in Asia, credit would fail at Rome; and unless you defend the safety of the allies, Roman citizens will not dare to invest money in the provinces, because of fear of disaster.

¹ *let us*, § 138.

² *forget, obliviscor.*

³ *of slight importance.* Cf. § 18 of the text.

⁴ *to citizens.* What case?

⁵ *you ought to have a care for;* in Latin, 'ought to be for a care to you.'

278. Pompey's Command, 20-23. Having spoken¹ in regard to the character of the war, Cicero said a few things about its magnitude. First,² he explained³ how much had been done by Lucullus, who had been sent a few years⁴ before to carry on the war against Mithridates. On his arrival⁵ in Asia,⁶ he freed from great danger a city of the Cyzicenes, which was being besieged by the well-equipped forces of Mithridates. He conquered and sunk a large fleet which was being hurried against Italy. Many cities of Pontus and Cappadocia were captured, and the king fled as a suppliant to other kings. While⁷ all this was being done, the allies of the Roman people were safe, and the revenues unimpaired. He had accomplished so much by his wise policy that Cicero wished to bestow on him as much praise as was due⁸ a brave man and a great general.

¹ *having spoken.* Use clause with **cum** or **quoniam**.

² *first, primum.*

³ *explain, expōnō.*

⁴ *years, § 71.*

⁵ *on his arrival.* Use clause with **postquam**.

⁶ *in Asia.* What case?

⁷ *while, dum.*

⁸ *was due, § 236.*

279. Pompey's Command, 24-27. It usually happens that a king, in misfortune, receives help from all those who think¹ the name of king is sacred; and so Mithridates, though conquered, was able to get back into his kingdom, and to inflict² so great a disaster upon the Roman people that it was brought to the

knowledge of Lucullus only by rumor. Although this general might have³ remedied the situation,⁴ he was forced to give up his army to Manius Glabrio, and to return home. A war, therefore, which two great kings are waging, and which many tribes have taken up, is both necessary and dangerous. It remains for us to speak in regard to putting a general in charge of this great war. Would that the choice were more difficult !

¹ *think*, § 134.

² *inflict*, *inferō*.

³ *might have* ; in Latin, ' *would perhaps have been able*.'

⁴ *situation*, *rēs*.

280. Pompey's Command, 28-31. It was necessary to put in charge¹ of this war a commander who possessed extraordinary knowledge of military science. From his youth Pompey had been trained in war, both on land and sea, and there was nothing depending on experience in military matters which had escaped his knowledge. No man had fought more often with an enemy, no one had subdued more provinces than he.² There was no kind of warfare in which he had not been trained³ by the fortune of the state. Not only had he waged wars, but he had also finished them. This being so, no one could doubt⁴ that he surpassed other men in knowledge of the science of war. Words could not be found worthy of the merit of Pompey. All the good qualities of a commander existed in him, and although other generals had accomplished much,

still⁵ no one could be found who was considered his equal.

¹ *put in charge*, **praefficiō**. What case follows?

² *he*, § 70.

³ *had not been trained*, § 134.

⁴ *doubt*, § 78.

⁵ *still*, **tamen**.

281. Pompey's Command, 32-35. For many years, the sea was so crowded with pirates that no revenues were safe. Envoys who were coming to Rome from foreign nations were captured, cities were plundered under the very eyes¹ of the praetor, and even the children of Roman citizens were carried off. Let us now consider what the incredible valor of one man has accomplished. He set out when the sea was unfit for navigation, and within three months, under his leadership, the long-continued war was finished, and not a pirate ship remained to plunder² the Roman fleets and capture the cities of their allies. If Pompey had not accomplished so much against the pirates, Cicero, perhaps,³ would not have urged the senate to put him in charge of the war against Mithridates; but since all, both citizens and allies, saw how quickly this dangerous war had been brought to an end, they hoped⁴ that Pompey, in a short time, would crush the forces of Mithridates.

¹ *under the eyes*. Follow the text.

² *to plunder*, § 95.

³ *perhaps*, **fortasse**.

⁴ *hope*, **spērō**.

282. Pompey's Command, 36-40. Pompey possesses¹ not only this wonderful fighting ability, but also many other good qualities of a commander. Consider, in the first place, how great his integrity is, and compare² him with all the generals you have seen; for you know what generals have taken off the paintings and statues of the Greek towns, and who has taken money from the treasury, and divided it among his friends. Recall what disasters our soldiers brought with them, when they made their marches through Italy; then you can judge what is going on abroad, and how many³ states of our allies have been ruined. But we should not be surprised that Pompey is better than the other generals, and permits no one to harm⁴ the allies.

¹ *possesses*. Note text.

² *compare*. Get the verb from the noun of related meaning in the text. Note that compounds of **con-** do *not* regularly take the Dative, but take **cum** and the Ablative. (§ 89.)

³ *how many*, **quot**.

⁴ *to harm*, § 242.

283. Pompey's Command, 41-44. There were formerly Roman generals of such self-restraint that our allies, even when conquered, esteemed their kindness more than they feared their valor. Believe me,¹ Pompey is a man of equal² self-restraint, and if we put him in charge of this war, our enemies will prefer to serve him rather than to command others. It is difficult to say how much weight³ the prestige of our commanders has in carrying on war, but without

doubt⁴ the enemy are strongly influenced by the reputation of those whom we send against them. Not to say more in regard to⁵ the prestige of Pompey, we know that no name on earth has ever been more renowned than his. There is no shore which his fame has not reached, and if we put him in charge of this war, as⁶ the Roman people demand, he will accomplish what we all desire, and our allies and tributaries will be saved.⁷

¹ *me*. What case?

² *equal*, *īdem*.

³ *how much weight it has*, *quantum* with *valeō*.

⁴ *without doubt*, *sine dubiō*.

⁵ *in regard to*, *dē*.

⁶ *as*, *ut* and Indicative.

⁷ *save*, *cōservō*.

284. Pompey's Command, 45-48. We cannot doubt that the good fortune of the Roman people brought Pompey to Asia at the critical moment, when large forces of Tigranes were threatening these regions; and we know what he accomplished at that time through his prestige. Did not¹ the Cretan states send envoys to him, to declare that they would surrender to him alone? Did not an envoy also² come from Mithridates himself to Pompey, while he was in Spain? These facts prove that his prestige has been very great among the enemies of the Roman people, and we can easily judge that it will have much weight³ at this time. It now remains for me to call to mind his good fortune. It can be said, briefly, that

all things yielded to his desires, and that the gods granted him that which others dared not hope for.

¹ *did not* ? § 19.

² *also, quoque.* See § 251. *h.*

³ *have much weight, multum valeō.*

285. Pompey's Command, 49-54. If Pompey did not have an army, and could not get other forces from those who have them, he would still be¹ the one to be put in charge of this war; and we could do this to the great advantage of the republic, for he has² a wonderful ability and a remarkable knowledge of warfare. Hortensius disagrees with this view, and thinks that everything ought not to be put in the hands of one man. If his influence had prevailed with you, fellow-citizens, when you wished to choose one man as general against the pirates, all the seas would even now be closed to us; for the pirates used to capture³ our ambassadors and praetors, and for several years in succession we could not defend our own harbors and coasts.

¹ *would be, etc.* Note text. In such Contrary to Fact conditional clauses, verbs implying *futurity* are sometimes Indicative and sometimes Subjunctive.

² *has, etc.* Note text.

³ *used to capture.* What tense?

286. Pompey's Command, 55-58. The Roman people had formerly been able to conquer the greatest kings, and to maintain all their allies in safety, but now they were nowhere a match for the pirates. Their commanders were no longer¹ ashamed to submit

to their enemies, although the provinces were being plundered and the seacoast of Italy pillaged. There was one commander who seemed able to free them from their misery and disgrace, and he was put in charge² of the war, in accordance with the Gabinian law. Pompey asked³ that he be permitted⁴ to take Gabinius with him as lieutenant, but objection was made because Gabinius had been⁵ tribune the preceding⁶ year. Cicero, however, said that he would refer the matter of his appointment⁷ to the senate, if the consuls should hesitate, and that nothing would prevent him from defending⁸ the rights of the people.

¹ *no longer*, **nōn iam**.

² *put in charge*, **praeficiō**.

³ *asked*, § 64.

⁴ *be permitted*, § 239.

⁵ *had been*, § 126.

⁶ *preceding*, **proximus**.

⁷ *the matter of his appointment*; in Latin, 'concerning appointing him.'

⁸ *from defending*, § 78.

287. Pompey's Command, 59-62. Catulus was a man of great influence among the Roman people, and his worth and integrity were such that Cicero said that all hope would be put¹ in him, if anything happened to Pompey. Cicero, however, disagreed with him when he said that nothing ought to be done contrary to the established customs of their ancestors. It seemed to Cicero that the state ought² to make new plans suit³ new circumstances, and to take advantage of the ability of the greatest generals, especially⁴ when

danger threatened the citizens. In the case of Pompey himself, many precedents had been established with the consent of Catulus. When he was a mere youth and a private citizen, he had been in command of an army, and was sent to Africa to conduct the war in that province. After he had brought back a victorious army, he celebrated a triumph, although he was a knight. He had even been made consul, before he could legally hold any other office.

¹ *would be put*, § 73. 2.

² *ought*. Use *oportet*.

³ *make suit*. One word.

⁴ *especially*, *praesertim*.

288. Pompey's Command, 63-66. Although you sent out Pompey for the war with the pirates against the protest of Hortensius, nevertheless he admitted that he and the other leaders ought to yield to your authority, for you can defend it against their opposition. This war in Asia requires a man with great military ability, and also (one) with very great self-restraint. It is difficult to say what disasters have been brought upon¹ our allies by the men² you have picked out to send with supreme command among foreign nations. What wealthy city is there in Asia which has not been plundered by these men? What temple that they have held sacred? I should be glad to think³ that Hortensius did not see⁴ the sufferings of our allies, or know how much we are⁵ hated by them.

¹ *bring upon*, *inferō*.

² *men*, § 11.

³ *should be glad to think*; in Latin, '*should gladly think*.' See § 147.

⁴ *did not see*. When?

⁵ *are*. Follow the rule for sequence, § 31. In English, also, *were* might be substituted for *are*.

289. Pompey's Command, 67-71. Shall we send¹ to our provinces men who cause us to be disgraced² among all our allies, or shall we put in charge of our army a commander who is able to restrain³ himself and his soldiers? For a long time we have accomplished⁴ nothing with our fleets, but now we have a general who is not only skilled in military matters, but is also so self-controlled⁵ that the allies are glad to have him come into the provinces with an army. I do not urge you to put all power into the hands of Pompey because I think that I shall secure his favor, but for the sake of the state, whose safety I put before my own advantage. With him as commander, this war will be finished and the Roman people will rule⁶ all nations, on land and sea.

¹ *shall we send*, §§ 20, 213.

² *to be disgraced*, § 73.

³ *restrain*, **cohibeō**.

⁴ *have accomplished*, § 210.

⁵ *so self-controlled*; in Latin, 'of so great self-control.'

⁶ *rule*, **imperō**.

REVIEW EXERCISES

290. Archias, 1-4. The oration for the poet Archias was delivered¹ by Cicero in the year² B.C. 62, before a Roman praetor and jurors, in a court established by law. Archias, a friend of Cicero, and a man of the greatest learning, was born at Antioch, of noble station. From his boyhood he had devoted himself to the study of literature, and quickly surpassed all, in a city which was filled with educated men. In this oration, Cicero said that Archias had been his guide in entering on the study of the liberal arts, and that he ought to be among the first³ to bring aid to him from whom he had received encouragement and instruction. He was afraid that it might seem strange to the jurors that an orator⁴ should speak on behalf of a poet, and he urged them not to forget⁵ that all arts were bound together by a kind of relationship.

¹ *deliver*, **habeō**.

² *in the year*. See § 55. Silanus and Murena were the consuls in this year.

³ *among the first to*. Note § 1 of the text.

⁴ *orator*, **ōrātor**, **-ōris**.

⁵ *forget*, **oblīvīscor**.

291. Archias, 5-8. At present, the people of Tarentum and Naples do not cultivate the Greek arts very vigorously, but at that time, they gave Archias

their attention,¹ and treated him with the greatest honor; and he was thought worthy of recognition not only by all the most scholarly and cultivated men, but also by those who wished to learn something from him. He found here at Rome two consuls who could² furnish him great achievements to describe, and many others who wished³ to show favor to a man of so great genius and character. The law of Silvanus and Carbo granted citizenship to the citizens of allied states, if they had had a residence in Italy and registered with a praetor. Archias had been a citizen of Heraclia for many years, he had at this time a residence at Rome, and⁴ he registered with Quintus Metellus.

¹ *gave their attention.* Note text.

² *could*, § 134.

³ *wished.* A Characteristic Subjunctive is possible, but the Indicative is preferable, as emphasizing the fact.

⁴ *and.* In a series of words, phrases, or clauses, *et* should be used between every two or not at all. The enclitic *-que* may be used with the last only.

292. Archias, 9-12. We know that Archias had a residence at Rome for many years before citizenship was given, that he registered with¹ the praetor, and that his name was inscribed in the records of Metellus. Since this is so, why should we be unwilling to grant to him the rights of citizenship, which have been given to so many men of ordinary ability? Do you say that he cannot be a citizen because the census does not show that he was enrolled? We all know that he was not in Italy when Caesar and

Crassus were censors, and for this reason, we do not find his name on the records.

Does it seem strange² to you that I take delight in this man? I am not ashamed to confess that the poet supplies me with that which refreshes my mind when it is wearied, and that from the study of literature I am able to bring forth that which is for the common good.

¹ *with, apud.*

² *seem strange.* See § 3 of the text.

293. Archias, 13-15. There are some who blame¹ me because I devote to the study of literature the time which others take for pleasure. No one, however, can justly be angry with me, because from these studies I draw whatever ability in speaking I have.² In the lives of the greatest men are examples which all ought to imitate, yet these would never have been put before us, had they not been carefully portrayed³ by the Greek and Latin writers. We cannot say that all great men have been trained by the study of literature. Some have been great, without education, because of an exceptional natural ability. But no one can deny that something remarkable comes into existence when education is added to natural ability.

¹ *blame, § 134.*

² *whatever I have;* in Latin, '*however much is in me.*'

³ *carefully portrayed.* Use one word.

294. Archias, 16-18. Marcus Cato was a very learned man for his time, who devoted himself to the

study of literature; and if he had sought from this study nothing but pleasure, it would still have afforded him a refuge in time of trouble, and a solace in old age. For this¹ not only is a most dignified relaxation for² the mind, but also helps us to understand and cultivate a love for² the highest art and for the wonderful activities of the mind; for we ought to admire these even more than surpassing grace of body. Without having written³ a single word, gentlemen, Archias can deliver extempore most excellent verses upon the very topics that are under discussion, and like all poets, is inspired, as it were, by the spirit of the gods.

¹ *this*. Demonstrative Pronouns, like Relatives, agree with their Predicate Nouns when they have them, instead of with the words to which they refer.

² *for*; in Latin, '*of*.'

³ *without having written*. Note text.

295. Archias, 19-22. Among many nations, the name of poet has been held sacred, and even beasts have been influenced by his song. Surely the verses of the poet ought to be pleasing to us, who have been trained¹ in all that is best. Shall we be indifferent to Archias, who is our own poet, and has spread abroad the glory of the Roman people? He has described the Mithridatic war, when Lucullus opened up² Pontus for us and routed a countless number of Armenians, and when Cyzicus was saved, and the fleet of the enemy was sunk off Tenedos. He has not only made the name of Lucullus renowned, but has also brought great

honor to the Roman people. Even if he were not a citizen, he would be worthy³ of citizenship, because by his genius these great deeds have been made known.

¹ *have been trained.* What person? For mood see § 216.

² *opened up,* § 224. 2.

³ *worthy, dignus.*

296. Archias, 23–27. If any one thinks that the fame of the Roman people has been less widely spread abroad because Archias made use of Greek,¹ he is mistaken. Greek is read everywhere, and by his verses the poet has caused the name of the Roman people to reach beyond² the limits where Latin is read. All the greatest generals are influenced by the desire for glory, and wish to have their deeds written about; for they know that their names will perish,³ unless they find in the poet the herald of their deeds of valor.⁴ If our commanders have considered excellence in writing as worthy of reward, and have even granted citizenship to those who have recorded their accomplishments, surely we, in this city, ought not to be indifferent to the safety of Archias, especially since his citizenship is already established⁵ by law.

¹ *make use of Greek, Graecē scribō.*

² *beyond, extrā.*

³ *perish, pereō.*

⁴ *deeds of valor.* One word.

⁵ *citizenship established.* See § 22 of the text.

297. Archias, 28–32. Archias had begun (to describe) in verse the things that I did in my consulship

in behalf of the welfare of the citizens. Because of a love for glory which was perhaps too keen, I urged him to carry¹ the thing through; for if the reward of glory be taken away, gentlemen, why should the mind be crushed² by so many toils and cares? And should we not seem most narrow-minded if our thoughts were restricted to³ the limits of our own lives? For my part,⁴ I would much rather leave behind me a portrait of my virtues, drawn by a man of the greatest genius, than a statue, which⁵ is the likeness of the body and not of the mind.

¹ *to carry*. Either as in the text, or with *ut* and the Subjunctive.

² *be crushed*, § 213.

³ *to*; in Latin, '*by*.'

⁴ *for my part*, *ego*.

⁵ *which*, § 172.

PART III

EXERCISES FOR THE SENIOR YEAR

298.

EXERCISE I

(A) 1. In the consulship¹ of Gnaeus Domitius Calvinus and Marcus Valerius Messalla, no consuls were elected at Rome because of bitter contentions between² parties and disorder in the city. 2. Titus Annius Milo, a friend of Cicero, wished to be elected consul, but could not secure this office. 3. Publius Clodius Pulcher was a man not only of great natural ability and shrewdness, but also very reckless and wicked. 4. He was a personal enemy of both Cicero and Milo, and actively opposed the latter when he sought the consulship. 5. Early the next year³ Clodius and Milo met by chance on the Appian Way, a few miles from Rome. 6. In the fight which followed, Clodius was killed, and Milo is supposed either to have killed him himself or to have ordered his slaves to kill him.

(B) When Milo was accused on this charge in a special court, Cicero attempted to defend him, but because he was frightened by the sight of the soldiers

¹ *consulship*, § 55.

² *between*; in Latin, 'of.'

³ *Early the next year*; in Latin, 'the next year beginning.'

whom he saw about him, and by the loud shouts of Clodius' friends, he did not speak with his usual eloquence, or finish the speech which he had prepared. Milo was convicted¹ and sent into exile at² Marseilles. Later on Cicero wrote out a long speech which he would have delivered³ at the trial if he had been able, and sent it to Milo, who is said to have replied: "I am glad that⁴ you did not deliver this speech, for if you had delivered it, I should not now be eating these delicious mullets of Marseilles."

299.

EXERCISE II

(A) 1. Cicero said that Milo was more disturbed about the safety of the republic than about his own. 2. He was afraid it would be disgraceful for him not to show equal courage. 3. The guards which had been placed in front of all the temples caused⁵ some⁶ fear to the orator. 4. Nevertheless he thought that those arms and those cohorts would bring him not danger but protection, and that they encouraged him to be⁷ of good cheer. 5. The outcries of those who were hostile to Milo ought to have warned⁸ the jurors to judge carefully and courageously. 6. Cicero urged

¹ *convicted*. Use a participle.

² *at*; in Latin, 'to.'

³ *would have delivered*. See Lesson 34, Part I.

⁴ *that*, etc., indirect discourse.

⁵ *caused*. Use *adferō*.

⁶ *some*; in Latin, 'something of.'

⁷ *to be*. What mode in Latin? ⁸ *to have warned*, § 107.

them to make clear by their votes that devotion to¹ all good citizens which they had often indicated² by their words.

(B) I have always thought, gentlemen of the jury, that Milo had to³ encounter these tempests of the public assemblies, because he had always fought for the good (and) against the wicked; but I never thought that in a court of law,⁴ and in a council in which men of the highest ranks were acting as jurors, the enemies of Milo would have any hope of destroying⁵ his safety or diminishing his glory. Milo, when tribune of the people, did many things for the welfare of the republic, but unless you see,⁶ gentlemen, that a plot was made against him by Clodius, we shall not ask you to pardon this crime because of Milo's many notable services to⁷ the state.

300.

EXERCISE III

(A) 1. They think that one who admits that he has killed⁸ a man ought not to live. 2. But Horatius, when⁹ the state was not yet free, was acquitted by the Roman people, though he admitted that he had killed his sister with his own hand. 3. When Africanus

¹ *to*. Use *ergā* with Accusative.

² *had indicated*, § 99.

³ *had to*, § 105.

⁴ *court of law*. Use *iūdicium*.

⁵ *of destroying*, § 94.

⁶ *you see*. What tense?

⁷ *to*. Use *in* with Accusative.

⁸ *has killed*. Change to the passive.

⁹ *when*, etc. Translate this clause without using a verb.

was asked by Carbo, the tribune of the people, what he thought¹ about the death of Tiberius Gracchus, he replied that he seemed to have been slain justly. 4. If it were a crime for wicked citizens to be killed, Servilius and Nasica would have to be considered criminal. 5. Who is there who doesn't know² that when a man has been slain it can be claimed in defence that the man was slain justly?

(B) The laws permit³ a night thief to be killed with impunity in any⁴ way, but a day thief (only) if he defends⁵ himself with a weapon. Moreover death cannot be inflicted unjustly upon a highway robber, and we should not be permitted to have our retinues and our swords if we were not permitted to use them. For the law does not forbid a man's being killed, but does forbid having⁶ a weapon for the purpose of killing him. And so, when the motive is investigated, the one who has used a weapon to defend himself is not considered to have had it for the purpose of killing a man.

301.

EXERCISE IV

(A) 1. There are some who think⁷ that the killing of Clodius was against the public welfare. 2. And yet not more than⁸ four or five can be found in the whole senate who do not favor the cause of Milo. 3. Plancus, the tribune, said that the senate decreed,

¹ *thought*. Use *sentiō*. ² *know*, § 134.

³ *permit*, *volō*.

⁴ *any*, *quisquis*.

⁵ *defends*, § 236. ⁶ *having*; in Latin, 'being with.' See § 61.

⁷ *think*, § 134.

⁸ *not more than*, *nōn amplius*.

not what it thought, but what I wished. 4. This moderate influence in a good cause which I have on account of my great services to¹ the republic is called my power by those who hate me. 5. Let them call it so, if only² I use it for the welfare of the good (and) against the mad acts of wicked men. 6. Although this investigation is not unjust, nevertheless the senate never thought it ought to be made.³

(B) There were laws and (there were) courts, both for⁴ murder and for violence, and⁵ the death of Clodius did not⁵ bring so much grief to the senate as to induce⁶ it to establish⁶ a special court. Why then did the senate decree that the burning of the senate-house and the killing of Clodius had been done contrary to the public welfare? Because no violence can ever take place in a free state which is⁶ not contrary to the public welfare? For no defence against violence is ever to be desired, but it is sometimes necessary. And yet, if the senate had been permitted by⁷ that mad tribune to do what it wished, we should have⁸ no special court.

302.

EXERCISE V

(A) 1. Why should we think⁹ that Pompey has passed judgment either about the fact or the case

¹ *to, in*, with Accusative.

² *if only*, § 229.

³ *made, cōstituō.*

⁴ *for*; in Latin, ‘*about*.’

⁵ *and . . . not*; in Latin, ‘*nor*.’

⁶ Look out for the mode.

⁷ *permitted by*. Use *licet per*.

⁸ *we should have*, § 148.

⁹ *should think*, § 213.

itself? 2. He didn't think, did he,¹ that it was necessary to investigate whether or not² this had happened. 3. If he had not seen that the one who had confessed could be acquitted, he never would have ordered an investigation to be made.³ 4. It is evident that Pompey has decided what you ought to look at in passing judgment. 5. When Marcus Drusus, the uncle of our juror here, was killed, the people were not consulted about his death. 6. How much grief do you think there was⁴ in this city when Publius Africanus was attacked (while) staying quietly in his own home?

(B) Why, then, was there no special investigation about the death of either Drusus or Africanus? Because the death of an eminent man cannot be caused by one crime and that⁵ of an obscure man by another. Even if there is a difference between the life of the highest and of the lowest, their death must be punished by the same laws. Was⁶ the death of Clodius more dreadful because he was killed among the monuments of his ancestors? Do you think Appian Claudius built⁷ that road not that the people might use it but that his descendants might there act the outlaw⁸? And yet, when Clodius had stained that same Appian Way with the blood of a Roman knight, that crime did not have to be punished.

¹ *did he*, § 19.

² *or not*, § 28.

³ *investigation to be made*. Use an impersonal passive.

⁴ *was*; in Latin, subordinate to *think*.

⁵ *that*, omit.

⁶ *was*, etc., § 19.

⁷ *built*, *mūniō*.

⁸ *act the outlaw*, *latrōcinor*.

303.

EXERCISE VI

(A) 1. Is it of little importance¹ that a slave of Clodius was placed in the temple of Castor in order to kill Gnaeus Pompey? 2. There are some who think that because the deed² was not accomplished, the attempt ought not to be punished, as if³ the laws punished results, not intentions. 3. I ask you, gentlemen, not to forget my own perils, and how often I have escaped from the bloody hands of Clodius. 4. Are we so foolish as to think⁴ that the death of Africanus and Drusus was more endurable than that of Clodius? 5. No one doubts that Pompey thought he ought to propose an investigation, but certainly men do not seem to know why he thought so. 6. Since Clodius had been his enemy and Milo his intimate friend, he feared that in the common joy of all he himself might seem to rejoice.

(B) But Pompey knew that, even if he seemed cruel in this matter, you would judge courageously, and so, in choosing the jurors, he did not exclude my friends, as some say, but picked out the best men of the state. For when⁵ he was choosing good men, he couldn't choose those who were not well disposed toward me, even if he wished (to). And when he picked out you, Lucius Domitius, to be in charge of this investigation, he picked out one who had shown

¹ of importance, § 188.

² deed, *rēs*.

³ as if, § 227.

⁴ as to think, § 222.

⁵ when, etc., § 224. 4.

that he could resist the fickleness of the crowd and the recklessness of the wicked.

304.

EXERCISE VII

(A) 1. It is necessary to put in charge of this investigation one who will decide these matters justly. 2. You ought to investigate nothing else except¹ (as to) which lay in wait for the other.² 3. Clodius saw that the elections had been so delayed the year before that he could not hold the praetorship many months. 4. In order to escape Paulus (as) a colleague and to have a full³ year to hold the praetorship, he suddenly postponed his candidacy⁴ to the next year. 5. It occurred to him that his praetorship would be (a) very weak (one) if Milo was consul, and⁵ he saw that this would surely come to pass. 6. And so he began to say openly that Milo must be killed, and that even if his consulship could not be taken from him,⁶ his life could be.

(B) When Clodius learned that Milo had to make a journey to Lanuvium, he did not wait till Milo left Rome, but suddenly set out himself on the day before, in order to place an ambushade in front of his own farm. Milo, on the other hand, was in the senate that

¹ *except*; in Latin, '*unless*.'

² *which . . . for the other*; in Latin, '*which for which*.'

³ *full, integer*.

⁴ *postponed his candidacy*; in Latin, '*transferred himself*.'

⁵ *and . . . this*; in Latin, '*which*.'

⁶ *him*. Look out for the case.

day until it was dismissed. He then went home, waited a little, as men are accustomed to do, while his wife was getting ready,¹ and set out from Rome. He met Clodius in front of his farm at about five o'clock.² Several men at once made an attack on Milo and killed his driver. When he had jumped from his carriage and was bravely defending himself, some of his servants, who thought their master had been killed, fiercely attacked Clodius, and, without³ Milo's knowledge, did what each of us would have wished his own servants to do in such a case.⁴

305.

EXERCISE VIII

(A) 1. Why should not violence be put down by violence, or rather why should not recklessness be overwhelmed by valor? 2. Do not⁵ ask me to tell you what you and all good men have gained by this. 3. If it could be done justly I shall not try to make you think⁶ that he ought to be acquitted. 4. But if you should not acquit him, it would seem to Milo more desirable to be killed by Clodius than to be sent into exile by you. 5. Since it is clear that a plot was made, let us now consider who made it. 6. Show by your votes, gentlemen of the jury, that you do not doubt that in killing Clodius, Milo saved not only himself but also the republic.

¹ *get ready, sē comparāre.*

² *five o'clock; in Latin, 'the eleventh hour.'*

³ *without, etc. Use Ablative Absolute.* ⁴ *case, rēs.*

⁵ *Do not, § 139.*

⁶ *make you think, § 73.*

(B) We shall be content, provided we can make you believe that Clodius made a plot against¹ Milo. How, then, can we prove this? Let us ask first, as Cassius was accustomed (to do), for whose advantage² it was. For though no hope of profit ever drives a good man to crime, a slight profit often drives the wicked. If Clodius had killed Milo, he would have secured (as) consuls those who he thought would not desire³ to restrain his madness, or those who, even if they had wished, would perhaps not have been able to crush him, or to prevent him from carrying out⁴ those plans which he had made⁵ for⁶ destroying the republic.

306.

EXERCISE IX

(A) 1. I fear you do not know, gentlemen of the jury, how much it was for the interest⁷ of Clodius that Milo be killed. 2. For a long time he had seen⁸ that Milo was going to be consul unless he was removed. 3. There was no citizen who could think of the unrestrained praetorship of Clodius without very great fear. 4. But everybody saw that it would be unrestrained unless we had (as) consul one who dared⁹ and could restrain him. 5. All good

¹ *against*. Use dative.

² *for whose advantage*, § 192.

³ *desire*, in Latin subordinate to *he thought*.

⁴ *from carrying out*, § 78.

⁵ *made*, *capiō*.

⁶ *for*; in Latin, 'of.'

⁷ *interest*, § 188.

⁸ *had seen*, § 210.

⁹ *dared*, § 134.

citizens would have shown by their votes, if they had been able, that they wished to free themselves from fear and the republic from peril. 6. But now, since Clodius has been removed, Milo must work by the customary methods¹ to gain the consulship.

(B) There are those who say that Milo killed Clodius through hatred, because he was angry with him, and because he wished to take vengeance on his personal enemy. But Clodius hated Milo, as everybody knows, more than Milo hated Clodius. And there were many reasons why that fellow should hate him; for Milo had helped and defended me, when Clodius had attacked me and was trying to drive me into exile; he had restrained the madness of Clodius himself, and finally had been his accuser. With what feelings, pray, do you think that wild beast bore all this?² And how reasonable his hatred was, if the hatred of a wicked man can ever be rightly considered reasonable!

307.

EXERCISE X

(A) 1. It has been said that the natural disposition³ and habits⁴ of Milo ought to prove him guilty, as if Clodius never did anything by⁵ violence. 2. Did you not see Hortensius, a most eminent and patriotic man, almost killed by the hand of slaves?

¹ *methods*, *rēs*.

² *this*; plural in Latin.

³ *natural disposition*; in Latin, '*nature*.'

⁴ *habits*; singular in Latin.

⁵ *by*, *per*.

3. You all know that that¹ dagger of his, which he received from Catiline, has been aimed at me² time and again. 4. He plotted against Pompey and stained the Appian Way with the blood of Papirius. 5. And recently he would have finished my career³ if my (good) fortune had not stood in his way. 6. If he had not been killed he could not have been prevented from overwhelming the state with his violence.

(B) If Milo had wished to kill Clodius, there were many notable chances for⁴ avenging himself justly. Why didn't he kill him when⁵ he was defending his own home against⁶ that fellow's attack, or when all Italy was so stirred up about my safety, on the day when⁵ the law concerning me was proposed, that even if Milo alone had killed him, all the citizens would have claimed the praise for themselves? For at that time the chief men of the state were his⁷ opponents and my⁸ defenders. There was the consul, Lentulus, there were nearly all the praetors and tribunes, and Pompey himself, the leader in⁹ my return, who, in a most weighty speech, urged the Roman people to join together for the purpose of restoring me to my country.

¹ *that of his.* Use *ille*, following the noun.

² *at me.* Use Dative.

³ *my career*; in Latin, '*me.*'

⁴ *for*; in Latin, '*of.*'

⁵ *when*, § 224. 2.

⁶ *against . . . attack.* Use Ablative Absolute.

⁷ *his*, emphatic.

⁸ *my*; in Latin, '*of me.*'

⁹ *in*; Latin, '*of.*'

308.

EXERCISE XI

(A) 1. When Clodius' friends made¹ an attack on Pompey (while) speaking for Milo, they gave the latter not only a chance but also a reason for² crushing his enemy. 2. Mark Antony was a young man of such ability as to give³ great hope of safety to all good men. 3. When Clodius was fleeing in terror⁴ toward the Tiber, we all prayed that Milo would free us from that curse of the republic. 4. Why should he kill unjustly and at the risk⁵ of (his) life one whom he could have killed justly and with impunity? 5. When election day⁶ is close at hand, we are afraid of everything, and shudder at every worthless rumor. 6. For we know how sensitive and changeable the feelings⁷ of our fellow-citizens are toward one who seeks the consulship.

(B) We have seen, then, that the citizens are often angry with candidates, not only because of some misdeed, but even when they have acted rightly. Does any one⁸ suppose that Milo, having in mind the day of the election, planned to ask from his fellow-citizens, with bloody hands, the highest honor (in the gift) of the state? But even if this is unbelievable in the case of Milo, no one doubts that Clodius, who thought

¹ made, § 224. 4.² for; in Latin, 'of.'³ as to give, § 39.⁴ in terror. Use a perfect participle.⁵ at the risk, Use no preposition.⁶ election day; in Latin, 'the day of the elections.'⁷ feelings. Use *sēnsus*.⁸ any one, where a negative is expressed or implied, *quisquam*.

that if¹ Milo was killed he would have things his own way,² was reckless enough³ to do this very thing. For the greatest temptation to⁴ wrong doing, gentlemen, is the hope of impunity, and if any one thinks this hope was greater in Milo than in Clodius, he is very much⁵ mistaken.

309.

EXERCISE XII

(A) 1. I call you to witness, Cato, that, while Clodius was (still) alive, you were informed by Favonius that Clodius had told him that Milo would die within three days. 2. Why should you doubt what he did, when he did not hesitate to disclose what he was going to do? 3. There was no doubt that Milo had to start for Lanuvium on that very day when⁶ he did start. 4. Although Clodius knew that Milo would be on the road that day, there was no reason for Milo's thinking⁷ that Clodius would be. 5. Clodius hastily set out from Rome, and planned to attack Milo before he got to Lanuvium. 6. I do not need to be afraid that I shall be thought⁸ to have planned a thing which I could not suspect would happen.

¹ *if*, etc. Express this clause in two ways.

² *have things his own way*. Use **rēgnō**.

³ *reckless enough*; in Latin, '*of so great recklessness that*,' etc.

⁴ *to*; in Latin, '*of*.'

⁵ *very much*, **vehementer**.

⁶ *when*. Use a pronoun.

⁷ *for thinking*; in Latin, '*why he should think*.'

⁸ *be thought*. Use **videor**.

(B) What reason was there, pray, why Clodius should hasten to Rome, or what was it that he could accomplish that night but would lose if he should come to the city early the next day? And just as an arrival in¹ the city by night² was to be avoided³ by Clodius rather than sought for, so Milo, if he were a plotter of this sort, would have lain in wait for him when he knew that he would come to the city by night; for the place was full of robbers, and if Milo had denied⁴ (it), everybody would have believed him. If, then, he did not kill Clodius in that place or at that time when he could have killed him with impunity, who can doubt (as to) which lay in wait for the other?⁵

310.

EXERCISE XIII

(A) 1. We see that the place where they fought was suitable for the attack. 2. No one can doubt that⁶ he had planned the ambuscade in the hope of killing his enemy. 3. A thousand men were near at hand when⁷ the attack was made. 4. If he had been⁸ the plotter, he would not have taken his wife with him. 5. The facts show why he chose this spot especially. 6. Did⁹ he turn aside to see Pompey who, at this time, was not at home? 7. He

¹ *in*; in Latin, 'to.' ² *by night*. Use an adjective.

³ *to be avoided*, § 99. ⁴ *if . . . denied*. Use a participle.

⁵ *which . . . for the other*; in Latin, 'which for which.'

⁶ § 78.

⁷ § 224. 2.

⁸ § 147.

⁹ § 19. 1.

was not willing to leave the place until ¹ Milo arrived. 8. He said he wished to see the country-house of Pompey, although he had been in it a thousand times.

(B) Let us now compare the journey of this marauder with that of Milo, and we shall see what he had in mind. Always before, he had travelled with his wife and in a carriage. Now he was on horseback ² and had with him no one except a band of picked men. With Milo was his wife and a company of maidservants, whom he would not have taken with him if he had planned murder. Perhaps it may be asked ³ why, since this was so, Clodius was killed and the one ⁴ who seemed unprepared escaped. Milo knew how much it concerned ⁵ (the interest of) Clodius that he be killed, and for this reason he never exposed his life to danger without sufficient protection.⁶ Moreover the outcome of such an attack is always uncertain, and the man ⁴ who seems better prepared ⁷ is often overthrown.

311.

EXERCISE XIV

(A) 1. He feared that they would not be able to bear the pain and would confess that Clodius had been killed by the slaves of Milo. 2. We ought to inquire whether ⁸ this act has been committed ⁹ justly.

¹ § 120.² *on horseback* ; in Latin, '*on a horse.*'³ Use Potential Subjunctive. ⁴ *the one, ille.* ⁵ § 188.⁶ § 46. ⁷ *better prepared.* Express by comparative.⁸ See footnote, p. 16.⁹ *this act has been committed* ; in Latin, '*it has been done.*'

3. A slave who defends¹ the life of his master is worthy not only of freedom, but of every sort² of reward. 4. After the assembly had been appeased, Cato said the same thing which I have said. 5. We are now permitted³ to inquire whether the reward which he gave to his slaves was large enough. 6. It is necessary to hold an investigation⁴ concerning the death of a Roman citizen. 7. We urge him to find out the truth even if punishment follows.⁵

(B) We ought at this point to inquire what sort of examination (it) was. A certain one of the slaves⁶ of Clodius was asked if his master had plotted against Milo. If he had replied that this had been done, he would certainly have been put to death. If he had said that it was not true, he would have been set free. Do you think that any investigation could be surer than this⁷? On the other hand, let⁸ us consider with what feelings Milo returned to Rome. He was alarmed by no fear; he hurried to the city and put himself under the power of the people and the senate, and even of that man to whom the senate had entrusted the welfare of the state. All this shows that he had confidence⁹ in his own cause and that he feared nothing because he had done nothing to make him afraid.¹⁰

¹ § 134. ² every sort of reward, *omnia praemia*. ³ § 61.

⁴ to hold an investigation; in Latin, 'it to be inquired.'

⁵ § 236. ⁶ § 46, end. ⁷ § 70. ⁸ § 138.

⁹ have confidence, *cōnfīdō* with Ablative of the thing.

¹⁰ to make him afraid; in Latin, 'why he should fear.'

312.

EXERCISE XV

(A) 1. Let us not hesitate to approve the cause of Milo, since we see the reasonableness of his acts. 2. Do not¹ forget, gentlemen of the jury, the opinions which were held by the enemies of Milo, when the news of the murder of Clodius was first received. 3. We know they denied that he would return to Rome. 4. It is almost worth his while² to be exiled, provided his hatred be satisfied by the death of this foe. 5. Seeing³ that his country was now free from such a curse, he did not hesitate to submit to its laws. 6. No one could doubt that⁴ he wished us to enjoy those things which he had preserved. 7. We ought not to suspect those men who have taken counsel for the best interests of the state.⁵

(B) I will say a few words in regard to the charges which were afterward brought against him. They were such, truly, that no man, however innocent, could disregard them. It was said that a large number of swords and javelins were seized; that houses had been hired for Milo in every part of⁶ the city; that his own house was full of shields; that a conspiracy had been formed for⁷ killing Pompey, and that a certain slave of Milo had been stabbed, so that he could not give evidence in regard to this. Not

¹ § 139.² *it is . . . worth his while, est ei tantū.*³ Use *cum*.⁴ § 78.⁵ *best interests of . . . state, summa res pūblica.*⁶ *every part of, tōtus.*⁷ § 95.

only were these things reported, but also there were many who believed¹ them, until² an investigation was held. In such a case, those to whom the interests of state have been entrusted must listen to whatever is said, but it is not necessary for me to say that every word³ was spoken falsely.

313.

EXERCISE XVI

(A) 1. You cannot persuade me that Milo has ever plotted wickedly against you. 2. He is truly a man of incredible valor, if you think it necessary to arm all Italy against him. 3. You must guard your house with a picked (force of) young men. 4. There are some who even now fear⁴ Milo because of the crimes of which he has been accused. 5. We shall not allow that suspicion to be so deeply fastened on you that it cannot be removed. 6. We beg you⁵ to listen to what⁶ has been said concerning the opportunity which was offered. 7. They ordered him to protect the safety of the consuls and the city. 8. He proved that no one had ever been a dearer friend to him than you.

(B) And yet⁷ who would believe⁸ that Pompey, a man most skilled in public affairs, would await a decision of law to punish one who desired to abolish the very courts by violence? He truly knows, as all men

¹ § 134.² § 118.³ *every word*; in Latin, '*all things*.'⁴ § 134.⁵ § 64.⁶ *what*; in Latin, '*that which*.'⁷ *and yet*, *quamquam*.⁸ § 213.

know, that such a charge was brought against Milo falsely. He plainly declares, when he sits in that place, surrounded by guards, that you are permitted to decide¹ justly in regard to this case, even if you decide against the verdict of that assembly which was held yesterday. He had been ordered to see to it that the interests of state should suffer no harm,² and by this decree he has been sufficiently armed against the attacks of all. The times are so full of peril that we are truly fortunate in that³ we have the assistance of so brave and upright a man.

314.

EXERCISE XVII

(A) 1. I am not so ignorant of your feelings, gentlemen of the jury, as not to know what you think concerning the death of Clodius. 2. I shall not try to persuade him to mention the man who has done this. 3. When⁴ many murders had been committed in the forum, he drove not a few citizens to their homes by force of arms.⁵ 4. They can easily be persuaded⁶ to threaten him with death. 5. He was the only man, by whose punishment the crime could⁷ be expiated. 6. If I had said that he drove citizens from the country, you would have asked me why I

¹ § 61.² *that the interests of state should suffer no harm*; in Latin, '*lest the republic should take anything (quid) of harm.*'³ *in that*, **quod**.⁴ *when*, **ubi**; § 110.⁵ *force of arms*; in Latin, '*force and arms.*'⁶ § 85.⁷ § 134.

allowed¹ him to live. 7. Seeing² that he could not obtain his request, he did not hesitate to kill this man, whom all judged to be the saviour of the city.

(B) I have so far spoken only of those things which we have for a long time been compelled³ to endure. We ought not, however, to forget the dangers which were then at hand and threatened us and our children, for they were such that no one could longer overlook them. If he had secured that power which he wished, no home in the city would have been safe. He was about to enlist⁴ an army of slaves and to take possession of the state and the private property of every one.⁵ Would that this danger had been imaginary and that Publius Clodius had been falsely accused of these crimes! There can be no one, however, so demented as⁶ to reject the proofs which we hold, or to deny that the death of Clodius has been a great relief⁷ to the state.⁷

315.

EXERCISE XVIII

(A) 1. We shall not have to fear⁸ in what way the state will bear this. 2. I have caused the frenzied attacks of this man to be turned aside from you. 3. Who is there who does not feel that Milo has been of great service to the state? 4. There is no doubt that this victory has brought more joy to all than

¹ *allow, patior* ; § 61.

² § 210.

⁶ § 222.

⁴ § 98.

⁷ § 141.

² Use *cum*.

⁵ *every one* ; in Latin, '*all*.'

⁸ § 101.

(that) of the greatest generals. 5. I do not fear that I shall seem to be inflamed with too great hatred. 6. What crime is there which he did not devise and undertake? 7. Since we know how much evil¹ there was in this man, we rightly call him the enemy of all. 8. If Milo should say² that he killed Clodius, he would not have to fear that any one would say that he had acted unjustly.

(B) When Cicero asked the jury if³ they would be willing to acquit Milo, provided⁴ Clodius could be raised from the dead, they were so alarmed at the mere thought that it was not difficult to perceive what their feelings were. Even Pompey, a man of such worth⁵ and influence that he could do what⁶ other men did not dare to do, would not have raised him from the dead, if he could have (done so). Since neither the men who proposed the law under which the investigation was being held, nor the jury who were sitting as avengers of the death of Clodius, desired him to be restored to life, there is no reason why the accused should fear, even if he should confess that he was guilty.

316.

EXERCISE XIX

(A) 1. He will never repent⁷ of this act, even if you allow⁸ him to be hurried off for punishment.

¹ § 46.² § 145.³ See footnote, p. 16.⁴ § 229.⁵ § 135.⁶ *what*; in Latin, '*that which*.'⁷ § 186.⁸ What tense?

2. We must¹ believe him, when he says he did it for the sake of the common safety. 3. We urge you to approve² what he has done, since he is the defender of your lives. 4. I should be³ ungrateful, if through fear of unpopularity, I should not defend him. 5. If he were⁴ a wicked and dangerous citizen, he would be worthy of even greater punishment.⁵ 6. Fear of unpopularity and death did not prevent me from defending⁶ the state in my consulship.⁷ 7. It is (the part)⁸ of a brave man not to be afraid, even if great danger threatens him. 8. It is to the interest of all citizens that a guilty man be punished.

(B) The gratitude of the Roman people is due not only to you but especially to the immortal gods, under whose guidance⁹ safety has been secured for all. Is there not¹⁰ a divine power which rules the sun and the sky and the stars? No one denies that there is such a force, except, perhaps, one who thinks that because it cannot be seen, it does not exist. This same divine power, which has often brought good fortune to the city, has at last removed the plague which threatened us and our homes. He who dared to attack with the sword the bravest of men has been defeated, and this result¹¹ has been brought about not by human wisdom but by the extraordinary watchfulness of the gods.

¹ § 105.² § 60.³ § 145.⁴ § 147.⁵ § 200.⁶ § 79.⁷ § 55.⁸ § 183.⁹ *under whose guidance.* Use Ablative Absolute.¹⁰ § 19. 2.¹¹ *result, rēs.*

317.

EXERCISE XX

(A) 1. Neither human wisdom nor ordinary care (on the part) of the immortal gods has caused¹ that monster to fall. 2. He who has polluted the sacred groves of Jupiter with every sort of debauchery ought to be punished. 3. It did not happen by accident that he received his first wound before this shrine. 4. It is not right for illustrious men to bestow any honor on a most loathsome parricide. 5. If your power had not prevailed, he would have enjoyed endless license.² 6. The anger of the gods which had reserved him for this notable punishment inspired in his companions such madness that they allowed his body to be cast out, covered with blood and dust. 7. He was deprived of that honor³ which even enemies are accustomed to bestow on the dead.

(B) Although he had for many years planned evil against the state, we did not seem to be able to thwart his designs⁴ until⁵ the immortal gods put it into his mind⁶ to assault Milo treacherously.⁷ He had desecrated the most holy places with debauchery and had broken down the most important decrees of the senate. Nothing prevented him from annulling acts which had been passed⁸ for the safety of the state, nor could he be persuaded⁹ to yield to the threats of enemies

¹ § 73. ² What case? ³ § 68. ⁴ § 86. ⁵ § 120.

⁶ put it into his mind; in Latin, 'gave him this purpose.'

⁷ assault . . . treacherously, *insidiās faciō*, with Dative.

⁸ acts which had been passed, *gesta*.

⁹ § 85.

nor to the entreaties of friends. He thought that everything which he coveted would be his, and that no one would dare to oppose him, since he had so long done whatever¹ he wished without fear of punishment. Seeing² that Milo alone stood in his way, he determined that Milo must die.

318.

EXERCISE XXI

(A) 1. If we were eager only for the safety³ of the state, we should not complain in regard to the killing of a wicked citizen. 2. Much more ought we to complain that he was permitted to do so much harm (while) living. 3. Do not⁴ forget that, so long as he was alive, we could not withstand the attacks which he made on our lives and property. 4. If the gods had not given him such a purpose, we should not to-day be living in this republic. 5. Let his friends complain, if they wish, in regard to what has been done, provided the state (as a) whole understands that it was necessary. 6. There are (some) who say much of what was done in the Appian Way and forget that something happened in the senate-house.

(B) When Clodius had been killed, his slaves fled and left his body in the road. The next day it was brought to Rome by a certain senator, who found it when he was returning to the city, and caused⁵ it to be placed in a public spot. It was afterward carried

¹ *whatever*; in Latin, '*those things which*.'

² Use **cum**.

³ § 182.

⁴ § 139.

⁵ § 73.

into the forum and placed on the Rostra, where it was left uncovered so that all might see the wounds. The tribune addressed the people who had come together in large numbers to see the body, and so aroused them by his words that they carried it into the senate-house and, tearing up the benches,¹ made a funeral pyre and burned the senate-house itself, together with the body. And so, even after his death, Clodius was the cause of a notable disaster to the city.

319.

EXERCISE XXII

(A) 1. Although you said that Roman citizens were being murdered, you were not willing to listen to Marcus Coelius, a man of extraordinary courage and devoted to the interests of state. 2. It remains for me to beg² you,³ gentlemen of the jury, to show him the mercy which he himself will not ask. 3. Do you think that, because you have never seen Milo weeping, you ought not to spare him⁴? 4. No one doubts that a man who is brave and offers himself to death without fear, ought to be aided more than one who is timid and begs that he may be allowed to live. 5. Enough has been said concerning the case, since we all know that the defendant has been unjustly accused of crime. 6. If I am not permitted to enjoy these advantages⁵ with you, I

¹ § 55.

² *for me to beg.* Use substantive clause of result.

³ § 64.

⁴ § 84.

⁵ What case?

shall rejoice that the city is still standing and the citizens unharmed.

(B) When we hear the words of Milo, who desires the safety¹ of his fellow-citizens more than his own, we know how much the acts of those who oppose him are to be despised.² He had hoped to enjoy with you the advantages of a state which had been set free from danger and was prosperous and happy. He had devoted himself to the senate when he was tribune, and had tried in every way to restore the former glory of his country. We all know that these efforts have not been made in vain, although there are some among us who seem to belittle what he has accomplished. We ought not to allow a man of such worth to submit to the accusations of those who think only of themselves, and are forgetful of the best interests of state.³

320.

EXERCISE XXIII

(A) 1. Surely that man who has subjected himself to death on our behalf is worthy of the renown which we give to a brave man. 2. He did all this, while⁴ his fellow-citizens were thinking too much of danger. 3. He surpasses all in zeal for preserving⁵ the common safety, and we cannot doubt that he will secure the commendation which he deserves. 4. He did not fear that he would not receive the good-will of

¹ § 84.² § 99.³ *best interests of state*, **summa rēs pūblica**.⁴ § 117.⁵ § 95.

the senate and the common people. 5. The safety of all was in danger so long as those of the lowest class, with Publius Clodius as their leader,¹ desired his death. 6. We have² less doubt because we know this has been done that our lives might be more secure. 7. Your voice, Marcus Tullius, which has always been of great assistance³ to many, ought to aid Milo.

(B) We are accustomed to consider that man as most fortunate who, because of his deeds, seems worthy of renown in the eyes of his countrymen.⁴ Since this is so, no man ought to be considered more fortunate than he of whom we are now speaking. But it often happens that he who has done nothing in his whole life except (that) which is most honorable, and who has repeatedly performed a notable service for the state, does not secure the reward which is due. Therefore, even if Milo feels that in this case the ill-will of some has fallen on him, he knows that his renown will increase as the years go by,⁵ until his name becomes established in all lands wherever the power of the Roman people extends.

321.

EXERCISE XXIV

(A) 1. The more⁶ divine is that virtue of yours, the greater⁶ is my grief that I am separated from

¹ § 55.² § 41.³ § 141.⁴ *in the eyes of his countrymen*, § 192.⁵ *as the years go by*, **per annōs**.⁶ *The more . . . the greater*; in Latin, 'by how much (quō) more . . . by so much (eō) greater.' See § 71.

you. 2. I cannot forget that if you are taken from me there will be nothing left to comfort me; but I hope that such a misfortune will never befall me and those who have the best interests of state at heart.¹

3. What is there that I can do more in return for your services to me, since I have so conducted myself throughout all these days that, whatever happens to you, the same fortune is in store for me also?

4. Milo is a man of such incredible strength of mind that he is not moved by these tears. 5. What ought your feelings to be,³ gentlemen of the jury, when you consider how much danger he has incurred for the sake of the safety of all?

(B) Cicero, in his peroration, entreated the jury not to allow Milo to be driven away from the country which had brought him forth, and for which he had done so much. He appealed to the soldiers and centurions to see to it that the city should not be deprived of such an invincible citizen. "If there is a city," said he, "where there is no place for virtue, that is the city from which such a man should be banished. Rather should I desire to see Clodius alive, nay even, I should prefer to see him praetor or consul or dictator, rather than to punish so unjustly a man by whose efforts we have gained peace and tranquillity."

Milo, however, was condemned and went into exile

¹ *have at heart*; in Latin, 'consult for.'

² *more*, **amplius**.

³ *what ought your feelings to be*; in Latin, 'of what feelings ought you to be.' See § 135.

at Marseilles.¹ Several years afterward he was recalled from banishment by Coelius, the praetor, and was later killed, when he was trying to incite a revolt in favor of Pompey.

¹ Use the Accusative. Why?

COLLEGE ENTRANCE EXAMINATION PAPERS

AMHERST COLLEGE

SEPTEMBER, 1911

Caesar, seeing that the tide of battle was turning,¹ and that he must take advantage of the critical moment,² sent forward all his cavalry to attack the enemies' infantry in the rear; he himself with the rest of his soldiers, whom wounds, heat, and fatigue left scarcely capable³ of supporting their arms, hastened to charge them in front.

To the assembled Gauls he said: that he would make good their reverses by greater successes;⁴ for he would unite all the states and make the policy of the whole of⁵ Gaul one, a union which not even the world could resist; and that he had already almost accomplished this.

¹ *tide of battle was turning*; **res inclinatur** in proper mood.

² *critical moment*; **tempus**.

³ *left scarcely capable*; use **possum**.

⁴ *successes*; **commodus** in plural.

⁵ *the whole of*; **totus** in proper gender.

COLLEGE ENTRANCE EXAMINATION BOARD

1910

Elementary

During the Second Punic¹ War a battle was fought at Cannae² in which almost the whole Roman army was destroyed. If Hannibal had then followed the advice of Mago,³ he would have marched to Rome, where the people were terrified and could not decide what to do. When he refused to do this, Mago is said to have replied: "You know (how) to conquer, but you do not know (how) to use your victory."

¹ **Punicus.** ² **Cannae** (a plural noun). ³ **Mago**, gen. -onis.

1911

Elementary

1. They thought that they ought to choose a man of the greatest skill to carry on this war.

2. If we use all the provisions that we have, we shall be able to resist the enemy for ten days.

3. He tried to persuade them not to receive any one into the town, but they were unwilling to listen.

4. While I was returning to Rome, Cato reached the city and told the senate what I had done.

5. Both men waited to see whether the rest of the ships would assemble before nightfall.

6. Cicero said that Archias was worthy of citizenship because he had glorified (*illustrare*) the exploits of the Roman people.

7. Volturcius was arrested (*comprehendere*) by the praetors before he could cross the bridge.

1910

Advanced

The two armies approached until they were distant not more than a mile from each other, when they halted and pitched their camps. Lepidus had determined to fight only on level ground. So he gave orders that his soldiers should remain within their fortifications. The enemy on the other hand knew well that, unless they fought soon, they would suffer¹ from lack of water and forage, for Lepidus was between them and their supplies. Every day therefore they led out their troops in line of battle in the hope that Lepidus would come forth and try² the fortune of war. But he held firmly to his determination,³ although many of his officers murmured⁴ so loudly⁵ that if he had been a man of weaker⁶ spirit he would have yielded to their clamors. At last the enemy, despairing of the result⁷ if they remained where they were, suddenly made preparation to assault Lepidus' camp.

¹ laborare.

² experiri.

³ in consilio perseverare.

⁴ fremo.

⁵ Omit.

⁶ less.

⁷ eventus.

1911

Advanced

After I reached Capua, I had several conversations with Autronius. He begged me with tears to defend

him, saying that we had served the state together as quaestors. He mentioned¹ very many kindnesses which I had done to him, some also which he had done to me. By these words I was so moved that I almost forgot that Cornelius had been sent by him to murder me in my own house in the sight of my wife and children. If he had formed these plans with reference to² myself alone, I should never have been able to resist his entreaties. But when I pictured³ to myself the wretched lot of the city if Catiline had gotten possession of it, then I did resist not only him but also his kinsmen, the Marcelli, both father and son, although I enjoyed⁴ the friendship of both.

¹ mention, **proferre**.

² with reference to, **de**.

³ picture, **proponere**.

⁴ enjoy, **uti**.

HARVARD

JUNE, 1910

1. We have heard from Caesar that Labienus fought in many of those battles by which Gaul was overcome. If a difficult work was to be done, Caesar appointed him to lead the soldiers. But when the Gallic wars were finished Labienus left Caesar and fought against him with such zeal that he even killed some of the captives.

2. In the sixth year of the Gallic war Labienus was encamped near a river which was so difficult to cross

that he did not intend to cross it himself; nor did he think that the Treveri would cross it. Therefore having explained to a few officers what his plan was, he moved his camp with a great noise. The Gauls thought that he was running away, and having crossed the river followed him. When they were in a place disadvantageous to them, Labienus said to his men: "Now, soldiers, you have the enemy where you can overcome them. Fight as if Caesar were here with you."—Based on CAESAR: *De Bello Gallico*, VI, 7.

JUNE, 1911

1. When Caesar wished to keep the enemy from water, he sent certain soldiers to the river to drive them off (*repellere*), if they should attempt to descend from the hill. If he had not done this, he would not have been able to capture the town.

2. When the consul had called the senate together and was laying the whole matter before them, Catiline (who was) a man of the greatest boldness, entered the senate-house (*curia*) with the rest of the senators; and although he was aware that all knew that he had already made his plans for the war and that he was sending arms to his associate (*socius*) that everything might be ready when he arrived, still he dared to stay at Rome until he was driven into exile by the consul. After the senators heard that he had gone to Manlius at Faesulae, they no longer feared that he would destroy the state.

PRINCETON

JUNE, 1911

A. 1. Since the time was at hand, he called their commanders together.

2. He said that the enemy would send ambassadors on the following day to seek peace.

3. While this was going on, the soldiers were greatly terrified because they had heard that the Gauls were very fierce in battle.

4. But do not despair; we shall defeat them easily if only you are brave.

5. Can you ask why I ordered him to return to Rome?

B. After Catiline had fled, there were some at Rome who said he had been driven into exile by the consul. Would that this were true! But do you not know that he has set out for his camp in order to make war upon us? Yesterday, when the senate was convened, he did not fear to come to the temple of Jupiter Stator as if he were a harmless and innocent citizen. I asked him what plans he had made and when he intended to set out to meet his companions. Since he sees that all is known, he has now decided to act openly, and unless we make preparations against him, he will come upon us unexpectedly with his band of evil men.

SMITH COLLEGE

SEPTEMBER, 1910

Advanced

Shall we put up with this wretch who is longing to lay waste the earth? Ought we to bear with him when he is desiring to set fire to our city? These men stayed at Rome for the purpose of killing the consuls and the citizens fled from our city to save themselves. Let us not strengthen this conspiracy by not believing the story of the Allobroges. You must decide to-day, if it is of any interest to you, whether or not you will save your own lives and those of your wives and children. I thank the immortal gods that these wicked plots have been discovered.

SEPTEMBER, 1911

Advanced

If Cicero had not put the conspirators to death, his own life would perhaps have been more secure. But he could not be persuaded to show them mercy. He felt that while such men remained in Rome, the city was not safe. So he asked the senate to condemn them to death. The senators were so stirred by Cicero's eloquence that they could not resist him. After the conspirators had been executed, however, the people thought that this had been done unjustly, and for this Cicero was afterwards sent into exile, although he had rendered distinguished services to the state.

VASSAR COLLEGE

SEPTEMBER, 1910

Elementary

Write in Latin, marking the vowels that are long by nature:

1. I must send scouts to see where the camp is, before you set out from the town.

2. Although Caesar was in command of the troops, he ordered Labienus to make the attack upon the enemy.

3. Do not believe them; they are afraid that you will tell the spies that they are at Rome.

4. The supplies which Caesar sent would have arrived, if the soldiers had waited two days.

Advanced

After Mithradates had begun to conquer the Romans, a tribune, Manilius, proposed a law that Pompey should be in command of the Roman forces since he was a man worthy to hold such power. There were some who then declared that the republic must not be intrusted to one man. Cicero, however, said that no one but the commander who had driven the pirates from the sea could conquer Mithradates, and that if Pompey should not be sent to Pontus, Mithradates would soon regain his former kingdom. Then he urged that the Roman people should not refuse to make Pompey commander in chief.

SEPTEMBER, 1911

Elementary

Write in Latin, marking the vowels that are long by nature;

1. He ordered the soldiers to march to the river as quickly as possible, because he feared that the enemy would seize the camp.

2. When Caesar had learned these facts, he asked the Germans why they were making war on our province.

3. If you send the grain which we demanded three days ago, we will not make an attack upon you.

4. They think that he ought not to have sent it.

Advanced

During the consulship of Cicero, a senator named Sergius Catiline formed a plan to destroy the government, and persuaded several men of noble birth to join with him. The conspirators would doubtless have accomplished their plans if the consul had not been a brave man, but Cicero called the senate together and urged Catiline to leave the city. He told the enemy of the state that if he should refuse to obey the consul, the citizens would force him to go. There was no patriotic citizen who would not acknowledge that Cicero was worthy of the highest praise for disclosing the conspiracy.

WELLESLEY COLLEGE

SEPTEMBER, 1910

1. From his ship Caesar perceived the rocks covered with armed men. At this point the sea was so close to the cliffs that a dart could be thrown from the heights to the beach. The place appeared to him in no wise convenient for landing. And so, having cast anchor while he awaited the arrival of the vessels which were delayed, he called together his lieutenants and the tribunes of the soldiers, told them what information Volusenus had brought and what he had in mind to do, then urged them to carry out his commands as quickly as possible when the signal should be given.

2. Although there were some who did not think that the supreme command should be conferred upon one man, nevertheless the majority believed that if the war were not committed to Pompey, it would be protracted for many years. They had no doubt that with the same good fortune with which he had won so many victories before this time, Pompey would speedily bring this deadly war to a close.

SEPTEMBER, 1911

I

(a) Having pitched camp at a distance of a few miles from the Germans, Caesar waited for their ambassadors. When they came they spoke somewhat as

follows: "We Germans were not the first to make war upon you Romans and yet we do not refuse, if you provoke us, to fight in defense of our country, or of the lands which we have already taken in war. If you wish our friendship, we can be useful friends to you, for in courage and in strength and in resources we yield to one nation alone, the Suevi, for whom not even the immortal gods are a match: there is no one else left on earth whom we cannot conquer."

(b) Write in Indirect Discourse one of the two sentences of the speech in (a).

II

When the evidence was set forth, citizens, I asked the advice of the senate as to what it was their pleasure to have done. . . . And since the decree of the senate has not yet been written out in full, I will set forth to you citizens from memory what the senate decreed. First, thanks were paid to me in fullest terms because by my wisdom and foresight the state was freed from very grave dangers; then Lucius Flaccus and Caius Pomptinus the praetors were duly and justly praised because I had made use of their brave and loyal services. Credit was shared with my brave colleague because those who had shared in this conspiracy he had removed from his councils and those of the state.

YALE COLLEGE

SEPTEMBER, 1910

Yesterday I called the two praetors L. Flaccus and C. Pomptinus to me, explained the situation [to them], and showed [them] what it was my pleasure should be done. And they, brave men and lovers of the republic, undertook without any delay the difficult work. When it-began-to-grow-dark,¹ they went secretly to the Mulvian bridge and hid in-two-divisions in such a way that the Tiber and the bridge were between them. They had taken with them a few brave men and I myself had sent a few picked youths to help them. When the third watch was about over [*use the ablative absolute*], the ambassadors of the Allobroges, with the letters of Lentulus, Cethegus, and the other conspirators, were captured by those whom I had sent to the bridge; the letters were handed over to the praetors with the seals undisturbed and, just as day-was-breaking,² the ambassadors were conducted to me. Some asked me to open the letters, but I said that that I would not do this.

SEPTEMBER, 1911

Accordingly, all now in those places look upon Cn. Pompey as one, not sent from this city, but descended from heaven. Now at-last they begin to believe that there once were Roman men of such [*Lat. this*] self-

¹ *advesperascere*.² *dilucescere*.

restraint; a-thing-which by-this-time seemed to foreign nations incredible and falsely handed-down to memory. Now, the luster of our rule has begun to bring light to those peoples; now they understand that not without reason did their ancestors, at-that-time when we had magistrates of such [*Lat.* this] moderation, prefer to be-in-subjection to the Roman people (rather) than to rule-over others. Moreover, the approaches to him of private-individuals are said to be so easy, complaints about the injuries done-by [*Lat.* of] others so unrestricted, that he who surpasses princes in dignity seems to be on-a-level-with [*Lat.* equal to] the humblest.

NOTE. — Words inclosed in ⟨⟩ are omitted in the Latin.

INDEX

(The numbers refer to pages.)

- Ablative, absolute, 35.
 - of accompaniment, 40.
 - of accordance, 52.
 - of agent, 10.
 - of cause, 81.
 - of comparison, 48.
 - of degree of difference, 49.
 - of description, 94.
 - of manner, 52.
 - of means, 24.
 - of place where, 19.
 - of separation, 48.
 - of specification, 80.
 - of time, 57.
 - with adjectives, 135.
 - with *opus*, 135.
 - with prepositions, 32.
 - with *ūtor*, etc., 77.
 - with verbs of plenty and want, 136.
- absum, 57.
- accidit ut, 51.
- Accusative, of extent, 57.
 - with compounds, 61.
 - object and predicate, 131.
 - person and thing, 132.
- Active periphrastic conjugation, 67.
- Adjectives, agreement of, 116.
 - of plenty and want, 136.
 - with ablative, 135.
 - with dative, 86.
 - with genitive, 89, 123.
- Adverbs, position of, 178.
- Agreement, of adjectives, relative pronouns, and appositives, 116.
- of verbs, 139.
- annōn, 14.
- antequam, see *priusquam*, 79.
- Apodosis, 100.
- appellō, 131.
- Appositives, agreement of, 117.
- Asking, verbs of, 43, 132.
- audeō, 168.
- autem, 178.
- Calling, verbs of, 131.
- careō, 136.
- causā, position of, 179.
 - to express purpose, 66, 67, 176.
- Causal clauses, 85.
- Cities, construction with, 19.
- cōgō, 168.
- Collective nouns, agreement with, 140.
- Commands, 96.
- compleō, 136.
- con, compounds of, 61.
- Concessive clauses, 88.
- Conditions, 100.
 - mixed, 102.
 - in indirect discourse, 102, 163.
 - of comparison, 157.
- cōnstat, 166.
- cōstituō, 148, 168.
- contentus, 135.
- crēdō, 59.
- cum, conjunction, 89.
 - causal, 85, 153.
 - concessive, 88, 153.
 - temporal, 76, 153.
- cum, enclitic, 40.
- cum primum, 76.

cupiō, 40, 168.
cūrō, with gerundive, 173.

Dative, double, 98, 130.
of agent, 68.
of indirect object, 129.
of interest, 129.
of possession, 24.
of purpose, 98, 130.
of reference, 129.
of separation, 130.
of service, 98.
with adjectives, 86.
with compounds, 60.
with special verbs, 59.

dēbeō, 72, 168.

dēcernō, 148, 168.

Deciding, verbs of, 148.

Demanding, verbs of, 132.

Deponents, perfect participles of,
36, 173.

dēterreō, 56.

dignus, 135, 146.

Dimension, 57.

doceō, 132.

domus, 19.

Doubting, verbs of, 56.

dubitō, 56, 168.

dubium est, 56.

dum, *while* and *until*, 80.
in provisos, 159.

dummodo, 159.

efficiō ut, 51.

enim, 178.

etsi, 88.

Exhortations, 96.

extrēmus, 177.

faciō, with two accusatives, 131.

faciō ut, 51.

Fearing, verbs of, 44.

Feeling, verbs of, 125.

fit ut, 51.

fore ut, 51.

Forgetting, verbs of, 125.

frētus, 135.

frur, 77.

fungor, 77.

Future tense, 141.

futūrum fuisse ut, 163.

Genitive, position of, 177.

of description, 94.

of measure, 94.

of the whole, 27.

objective, 122.

partitive, 27.

predicate, 123.

subjective, 122.

with adjectives, 89, 123.

with interest and *rēfert*, 126.

with verbs of feeling, 125.

with verbs of judicial action,
126.

with verbs of memory, 125.

Gerund, 65, 176.

Gerundive, 65, 173.

Hindering, verbs of, 56.

hortor ut, 39.

iam diū, etc., 141.

idōneus, with dative, 86.

idoneus est quī, 146.

igitur, 178.

Imperative, 97.

Imperfect indicative, 140.

imperō, with dative, 59.

imperō ut, 39.

Impersonal use of verbs, 60, 69,
140.

Impersonal verbs, 166.

imus, 177.

in, with ablative or accusative,
32.

- indignus*, 135, 146.
 Indirect discourse, 26, 31, 162.
 commands in, 163.
 complex sentences in, 31.
 conditions in, 102, 163.
 questions in, 162.
 statements in, 26.
 Indirect discourse implied, 164.
 Indirect object, 129.
 Indirect questions, 13, 16.
 Indirect reflexives, 2, 32.
 Infinitive, as object, 168.
 as subject, 166.
 complementary, 167.
 in indirect discourse, 26.
 interest, 126, 166.
 Intransitive verbs in passive, 140.
iubeō, 39, 168.

 Judicial action, verbs of, 125.

 Knowing, verbs of, 26.

libet, 166.
licet, 39, 71, 166.
 Locative case, 19.

 Making, verbs of, 131.
mālō, 40, 168.
 May, might, 71.
medius, 177.
meminī, 125.
 Memory, verbs of, 125.
miseret, 125.
modo, with *provisos*, 159.
moneō, with two accusatives, 132.
moneō ut, 39.
 Must, 71.

 Naming, verbs of, 131.
nē, in purpose clauses, 18.
 in wishes, 97.
 with hortatory subjunctive, 96.
 with verbs of fearing, 44.
 with verbs of hindering, 56.
nē . . . quidem, 179.
 -*ne*, 9, 16.
necesse est, 71, 166.
 Necessity, 68, 71.
necne, 14.
noceō, 59.
nōlī, 97.
nōlō, 40, 168.
nōnne, 9.
num, 9, 16.

 Obligation, 68, 71.
obliviscor, 125.
oportet, 72, 166.
opus est, 166.
opus, with ablative, 135.
 Order of words, 177.
 Ought, 72.

paenitet, 125.
parcō, 59.
pāreō, 59.
 Participles, 36, 172.
 Passive, impersonal, 60, 69, 140.
patior, 39, 168.
 Perceiving, verbs of, 26.
 Periphrastic conjugations, 67, 68.
permittō, 39.
persuādeō, 39, 59.
petō ab, 132.
petō ut, 43.
 Place constructions, 19.
placeō, 59.
placet, 166.
possum, 168.
postquam, 76.
postulō ab, 132.
postulō ut, 43.
potior, 77.
praestat, 166.
 Predicate nouns, 117.
 Prepositions, position of, 178.

- Prepositions with ablative, 32.
 Preventing, verbs of, 56.
 Primary tenses, 14.
prīmus, 177.
priusquam, 79.
prohibeō, 56.
 Prohibitions, 96.
 Pronouns, demonstrative, 2.
 indefinite, 8.
 interrogative, 8.
 personal, 1, 119.
 possessive, 5, 6.
 reflexive, 2, 3.
 relative, 5, 116.
propior, 86.
 Protasis, 100.
 Provisos, 159.
proximus, 86.
 Purpose, dative of, 98.
 expressions of, 67, 176.
 relative clauses of, 18.
 subjunctive of, 18.

quaerō ab, 132.
quam, *than*, 48.
quamquam, 88.
quasi, 157.
 Questions, direct, 9.
 double, 10.
 indirect, 13.
 in indirect discourse, 162.
quia, 85.
quīdam, 27.
quīn, 56.
quoad, 80.
quod, causal, 85.
quōminus, 56.
quoniam, 85.
quoque, 178.

rēfert, 126.
 Reflexive, indirect, 2, 32.
 Relative clauses,
 of cause or concession, 146.
 of characteristic, 93, 146, 151.
 of purpose, 18.
 of result, 151.
reliquus, 177.
 Remembering, verbs of, 125.
resistō, 59.
 Restraining, verbs of, 56.
 Result, relative clauses of, 151.
 subjunctive of, 23.
 substantive clauses of, 51.
retineō, 56.
 Rhetorical questions, 143, 162.
rogō, with two accusatives, 132.
rogō ut, 43.
Rōmānus, 179.
rūs, 19.

 Saying, verbs of, 26.
 Secondary tenses, 14.
 Sequence of tenses, 14.
serviō, 59.
similis, 86, 123.
simul atque, 76.
sinō, 168.
statuō, 148, 168.
studeō, 59.
sub, with ablative or accusative,
 32.
 Subjunctive mood,
 after verbs of doubting, 56.
 after verbs of fearing, 44.
 after verbs of hindering, etc.,
 56.
 deliberative or dubitative, 143.
 hortatory, 96.
 in causal clauses, 85.
 in characteristic clauses, 93,
 146.
 in concessive clauses, 88, 153.
 in conditional clauses of com-
 parison, 157.
 in conditions, 101.
 in indirect discourse, 31, 162.
 in indirect questions, 13.
 in provisos, 159.
 in purpose clauses, 18, 39, 43.

- in result clauses, 23, 51, 151.
 in wishes, 97.
 jussive, 96.
 of attraction, 164.
 with **cum** causal, 85, 89, 153.
 with **cum** concessive, 88, 89, 151.
 with **cum** temporal, 76, 89, 153.
 with **dum**, 80.
 with **priusquam**, 79.
 Subjunctive, tenses in, 14, 141.
 Substantive clauses,
 of desire, 39, 43.
 of result, 51.
sui, 2.
sum, position of, 178.
 Supine, 66.
suus, 6.

tamen, 88.
 Temporal clauses, 76, 79, 80, 153.
 Tenses, 140.
 sequence of, 14.
 Thinking, verbs of, 26.

 Time constructions, 57.
 Towns, constructions with, 19.

ubi, *when*, 76.
 Until, 80.
ut, in purpose clauses, 18, 39, 43.
 in result clauses, 23, 51.
 in temporal clauses, 76.
utinam, 97.
ūtor, 77.
utrum, 10.

 Verbs, agreement of, 139.
 position of, 177.
vērō, 178.
vetō, 39, 168.
 Vocative, position of, 177.
 Voice, 140.
volō, 40, 168.

 While, 80.
 Wishes, 97.
 Wishing, verbs of, 40.

VOCABULARY

NOTE.—Regular verbs of the first conjugation are indicated by the figure 1.

A

abandon, relinquiō, ere, liqui, lictus.

ability, virtūs, tūtis, *f*.

natural ability, ingenium, nī, *n*.

have ability, possum, posse, potui.

able, be able, possum, posse, potui.

abolish, tollō, ere, sustuli, sublatus.

about, concerning, dē, *prep. with abl.*

about, around, circum, *prep. with acc.*

about (*with numerals*), circiter.

about to, § 98.

accept, accipiō, ere, cēpi, cepit.

accident, cāsus, ūs, *m*.

accomplish, perficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus; cōnsequor, ī, secutus.

account, on account of, propter, *prep. with acc.*

accusation, crīmen, minis, *n*.

accuse, accūsō, 1.

accused, the accused, reus, ī, *m*.

accuser, accūsātor, ōris, *m*.

accustomed, be accustomed, soleō, ēre, solitus.

acquit, liberō, 1; absolvō, ere, solvi, solutus.

across, trāns, *prep. with acc.*

act (*noun*), factum, ī, *n*.

act (*verb*), faciō, ere, fēcī, factus.

act as juror, iūdiciō, 1.

act the outlaw, latrōcinor, 1.

actively, acriter.

address, adloquor, ī, locutus.

admit, cōnfiteor, ēri, fessus.

advance, prōgredior, gredi, gressus.

advantage, bonum, ī, *n*.; commodum, ī, *n*.

advise, moneō, ēre, uī, itus.

affair, rēs, rei, *f*.

public affairs, rēs pūblica.

afraid, be afraid, timeō, ēre, uī.

after, post, *prep. with acc.*; postquam, *conj.*

afterward, post, postea.

again, iterum.

against, in, ad, contrā, *preps.*
with *acc.*

ago, ante.

agriculture, agrī cultūra, *ae, f.*

aid (*noun*), auxilium, *i, n.*

aid (*verb*), adiuvō, āre, iūvī,
iūtus, with *acc.*; opitulator,
1, with dat.

aim, intendō, ere, tendī,
tentus.

alarm, permovere, ēre, mōvī,
mōtus.

alive, vīvus, *a, um.*

all, omnis, *e*; tōtus, *a, um.*

allot, distribuō, ere, uī, ūtus.

allow, patior, patī, passus.

ally, socius, *cī, m.*

almost, ferē, paene.

alone, sōlus, *a, um.*

already, iam.

also, quoque (*postpos.*).

not only . . . but also, nōn
modo . . . sed etiam.

although, cum, quamquam.

always, semper.

ambassador, lēgātus, *i, m.*

ambuscade, insidiae, ārum, *f.*

among, apud, *prep. w. acc.*

ancestors, maiōrēs, *um, m.*

anchor, ancora, *ae, f.*

at anchor, ad ancoram.

and, et, atque, -que.

and . . . not, neque.

and so, itaque.

and yet, quamquam.

anger, ira, *ae, f.*

angry, irātus, *a, um, with dat.*

be angry, irāscor, *i, irātus,*
with *dat.*

announce, nūntiō, *1.*

annul, rescindō, ere, scīdī,
scissus.

another, alius, *a, ud.*

answer, respondeō, ēre, dī,
spōnsus.

Antony, Antōnius, *nī, m.*

any, any one, anything,
aliquis, aliqua, aliquid
(quod); after sī, nisi, nē,
quis, qua, quid (quod);
with negatives, quisquam,
quidquam (*pron.*); ūllus,
a, um (adj.).

appeal to, implōrō, *1.*

appease, plācō, *1.*

Appian Way, via Appia, *f.*

approach, adpropinquō, *1.*

means of approach, acces-
sus, ūs, *m.*

approve, probō, *1.*

arise, coorior, irī, ortus.

arm, armō, *1.*

arms, arma, ōrum, *n.*

army, exercitus, ūs, *m.*

arouse, incitō, *1*; concitō, *1.*

arrival, adventus, ūs, *m.*

arrive, perveniō, ire, vēnī, ven-
tum.

as, just as, ut, sicut, with *indic.*

as if, quasi, velut*sī.*

as soon as, simul atque.

as to, § 134.

ask, request, rogō, *1* (§ 64).

ask, interrogate, interrogō,
1.

ask, seek, petō, ere, ivī or
iī, itus.

ask, inquire, quaerō, ere, sīvī
or siī, situs.

assembly (*public*), cōntiō,
ōnis, *f*.

assign, attribuō, ere, uī, ūtus.

assistance, auxilium, lī, *n*.

at, in *with abl.*; ad *with acc.*;
sign of locative case.

Atrebatian, Atrebās, ātis, *m*.

attack (*noun*), impetus, ūs, *m*.

attack (*verb*), oppugnō, 1; ad-
gredior, ī, gressus; lacessō,
ere, ivī or iī, itus.

make an attack on, impe-
tum faciō in, *with acc.*

attempt (*noun*), cōnātus, ūs, *m*.

attempt (*verb*), cōnor, 1.

authority, auctōritās, tātis, *f*.

avenge, ulcīscor, ī, ultus.

avenger, ultor, ōris, *m*.

avoid, vitō, 1.

await, exspectō, 1.

away, be away, absum, abesse,
āfuī, āfutūrus.

B

baggage, impedimenta, ōrum,
n.

band (*of men*), manus, ūs, *f*.

banish, exterminō, 1.

banishment, exsilium, lī, *n*.

barbarian, barbarus, ī, *m*.

battle, pugna, ae, *f*.; proelium,
lī, *n*.

be, sum, esse, fuī, futūrus.

be at hand, adsum, adesse,
adfuī, adfutūrus.

bear, ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus,
proferō.

beast, wild beast, bestia, ae, *f*.

because, quod; §§ 125, 126.

because of, propter, *prep.*
with acc.; § 122.

befall, accidit, ere, accidit.

before (*adv.*), ante, antea.

before (*conj.*), priusquam, an-
tequam.

before (*prep.*), ante, *with acc.*

before (*adj.*), prior, superior.

on the day before, pridī.

beg, ōrō, 1; petō, ere, ivī or iī,
itus, § 64.

began, coepī, coeptus. *Use the*
pass. when the inf. is pass.

begin, incipiō, ere (*see began*);
(*of a period of time*), ineō,
īre, iī, itus.

behalf, in behalf of, prō, *prep.*
with abl.

behind, post, *prep. with acc.*

behind him, them, etc., post
tergum.

Belgians, Belgae, ārum, *m*.

believe, crēdō, ere, crēdidī,
crēditus; putō, 1.

belittle, minuō, ere, uī, ūtus.

bench, subsellium, lī, *n*.

bestow, adferō, adferre, attulī,
adlātus.

betray, prōdō, ere, didī, ditus.

between, inter, *prep. with acc.*

bitter, acerbus, a, um.

bitterly, ācritus.

blood, sanguis, guinis ; cruor,
ōris, *m*.

bloody, cruentus, *a, um*.

board, go on board, nāvem (*is*)
ascendō, ere, scendī, scēn-
sus.

body, corpus, oris, *n*.

both, each, uterque, utraque,
utrumque.

both . . . and, et . . . et.

boundaries, finēs, ium, *m*.

brave, fortis, *e*.

bravely, fortiter.

break down, perfringō, ere,
frēgī, frāctus.

bridge, pōns, pontis, *m*.

bring, ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus ;
dūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus.

bring about, cōficiō, ere,
fēcī, fectus.

bring forth, prōcreō, 1.

bring on, upon, inferō.

bring to, adferō, adferre, at-
tulī, adlātus ; addūcō, ere,
dūxī, ductus.

bring together, comportō, 1.

Britain, Britannia, *ae, f*.

Britons, Britannī, ōrum, *m*.

build, aedificō, 1.

(*of a bridge*), faciō, ere, fēcī,
factus.

(*of a road*), mūniō, īre, īvī,
or īī, ītus.

building, aedificium, cī, *n*.

burn, set fire to, incendō, ere,
cendī, cēnsus.

burning, incendium, dī, *n*.

but, sed.

buy, emō, ere, ēmī, emptus.

by, *abl. case* ; ab, *with abl. of*
agent.

C

call (*by name*), appellō, 1.

call to witness, testor, 1.

camp, castra, ōrum, *n*.

can, possum, posse, potuī.

candidate, candidātus, ī, *m*.

capture, capiō, ere, cēpī, cap-
tus.

(*by storming*), expugnō, 1.

Carbo, Carbō, ōnis, *m*.

care, cūra, *ae, f*.

carefully, diligenter.

carriage, raeda, *ae, f*.

carry, ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus.

carry back, referō, referre,
rettulī, relātus.

carry on, gerō, ere, gessī,
gestus.

carry out, accomplish, per-
ficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus.

case, causa, *ae, f*.

in the case of, in, *prep. with*
abl.

cast off, cast out, abiciō, ere,
iēcī, iectus ; eiciō.

Castor, Castor, ōris, *m*.

Catiline, Catilinā, *ae, m*.

Cato, Catō, ōnis, *m*.

cause (*noun*), causa, *ae, f*.

cause (*verb*), efficiō, ere, fēcī,
fectus ; faciō, ere, fēcī,
factus.

cavalry (*adj.*), equester, tris,
tre.

cavalry (*noun*), equitātus, ūs,
m. ; equitēs, um, *m.*

centurion, centuriō, ōnis, *m.*

certain (*indef. pron.*), quīdam,
 quaedam, quiddam.

certainly, certē.

chain, vinculum, ī, *n.*

chance, occāsiō, ōnis, *f.*

by chance, forte.

changeable, flexibilis, *e.*

charge, crīmen, minis, *n.*

be in charge, praesum, esse,
 fuī, futūrus.

bring a charge against, crī-
 men cōnferō, ferre, tulī,
 lātus, *with in and acc.*

put in charge, praefficiō, ere,
 fēcī, fectus.

chariot, currus, ūs, *m.*

cheer, of good cheer, magnō
 animō.

chief, chief man, princeps,
 cipis, *m.*

children, puerī, ōrum, *m.*

(*free born*), liberī, ōrum, *m.*

choose, legō, ere, lēgī, lēctus ;
 deligō, ere, lēgī, lēctus.

Cicero, Cicerō, ōnis, *m.*

citizen, cīvis, is, *m.*

city, urbs, urbis, *f.*

claim (*as an honor*), vindicō,
 1.

claim in defense, dēfendō,
 ere, fendī, fēnsus.

clear, make clear, dēclārō, 1.

it is clear, cōstat.

close, be close at hand, sub-
 sum, esse, fuī, futūrus.

cohort, cohors, cohortis, *f.*

colleague, conlēga, ae, *f.*

come, veniō, īre, vēnī, ventum.

come back, redeō, īre, iī,
 itum.

come together, conveniō,
 īre, vēnī, ventus.

come to pass, fiō, fierī, fac-
 tus.

come up, arise, coorior, īrī,
 ortus.

comfort, cōnsōlor, 1.

command, iubeō, ēre, iussī,
 iussus ; imperō, 1.

be in command, praesum,
 esse, fuī, futūrus, *with dat.*

commander, imperātor, ōris, *m.*

commence battle, proelium
 committō, ere, mīsī, missus.

commendation, commendātiō,
 ōnis, *f.*

commit, do, faciō, ere, fēcī,
 factus.

common, communis, *e.*

common people, plēbs, plē-
 bis, *f.*

companion, socius, cī, *m.*

company, comitatus, ūs, *m.* ;
 grex, gregis, *f.* (*implying
 contempt*).

compare, comparō, 1.

compel, cōgō, ere, coēgī, co-
 āctus.

complain, queror, ī, questus.

concern, it concerns, interest,
 esse, fuit.

concerning, dē, *prep. with abl.*

condemn, condemnō, 1.

- conduct (*oneself*), trāctō, 1,
with reflexive.
- confer, conloquor, ī, locūtus.
- conference, conloquium, quī, *n.*
- confess, cōnfiteor, ēri, fessus.
- confidence, fidēs, eī, *f.*
have confidence in, confidō.
ere, fīsus, with *dat. of persons*, *abl. of things*.
- conquer, vincō, ere, vīcī, victus;
superō, 1.
- consider, think over, cōnsī-
derō, 1.
- consider, believe, putō, 1;
existimō, 1.
- consider, regard, habeō, ēre,
habuī, habitus.
- conspiracy, coniūrātiō, ōnis, *f.*
- conspire, coniūrō, 1.
- consul, cōnsul, is, *m.*
- consulship, cōnsulātus, ūs, *m.*
in the consulship of, *abl.*
absol. with cōnsul.
- consult, cōnsulō, ere, uī, sul-
tus.
- content, contentus, a, um.
- contention, contentiō, ōnis, *f.*
- continent, continēns, entis, *f.*
- contrary to, contrā, *prep. with*
acc.
- convict, damnō, 1; condemnō,
1.
- council, concilium, lī, *n.*
- council of war, cōnsilium, lī, *n.*
- counsel, advice, cōnsilium, lī,
n.
- take counsel, cōnsulō, ere,
uī, sultum.
- country, native country, pa-
tria, ae, *f.*
- the country (*not city*), rūs,
rūris, *n.*
- country house, villa, ae, *f.*
- courage, virtūs, ūtis, *f.*
have courage, audeō, ēre,
ausus.
- courageously, fortiter.
- course, cursus, ūs, *m.*
- court, quaestiō, ōnis, *f.*
special court, nova quaestiō.
court of law, iūdicium, cī, *n.*
- cover, smear, oblinō, ere, lēvī,
litus.
- covet, adamō, 1.
- crime, facinus, oris, *n.*; crīmen,
minis, *n.*; scelus, oris, *n.*;
nefās, *indecl.*
- criminal, nefārius, a, um.
- cross, trāseō, īre, īī, itus;
trānsgridior, ī, gressus.
- crowd, multitūdō, dinis, *f.*
- cruel, atrōx, ōcis.
- crush, frangō, ere, frēgī, frāc-
tus; opprimō, ere, pressī,
pressus.
- cry out, clāmitō, 1.
- curse, pestis, is, *f.*
- custom, mōs, mōris, *m.*; cōn-
suētūdō, dinis, *f.*
- customary, ūsitātus, a, um.
- cut down (*of grain*), succīdō,
ere, cīdī, cīsus; (*of a*
bridge), rescindō, ere,
scīdī, scissus.
- cut off, interclūdō, ere, clūsī,
clūsus.

D

dagger, *sīca*, *ae, f.*
 daily, *cotidiānus*, *a, um.*
 damage, *adflīgō*, *ere, flīxī, flictus.*
 danger, *perīculum*, *ī, n.*
 dangerous, *periculōsus*, *a, um.*
 dare, *audeō*, *ēre, ausus.*
 day (*noun*), *diēs*, *ēī, m.*
 on the next day, *postrīdiē.*
 on the day before, *prīdiē.*
 day (*adj.*), *diurnus*, *a, um.*
 dead, *mortuus*, *a, um.*
 from the dead, *ex inferīs.*
 dear, *carus*, *a, um.*
 death, *mors*, *mortis, f.*
 debauchery, *stuprum*, *ī, n.*
 deceit, *simulātiō*, *ōnis, f.*
 decide, *cōstituō*, *ere, uī, ūtus.*
 decision, *iūdicium*, *cī, n.*
 declare, *dēclārō*, *1; cōfirmō*, *1,*
 decree, *dēcernō*, *ere, crēvī, crētus.*
 decree of the senate, *senātūs cōsultum*, *ī, n.*
 deed, *factum*, *ī, n.*
 deeds, achievements, *rēs gestae, rērum gestārum, f.*
 deep, *altus*, *a, um.*
 deeply, *penitus.*
 defeat, *superō*, *1.*
 defend, *dēfendō*, *ere, fendī, fēnsus.*
 defendant, *reus*, *ī, m.*
 defender, *dēfēnsor*, *ōris, m.*
 defense, *dēfēnsiō*, *ōnis, f.*
 delay, wait, *moror*, *1.*

delay, protract, *trahō*, *ere, trāxī, trāctus.*
 delicious, *suāvis*, *e.*
 deliver (*of a speech*), *habeō*, *ēre, uī, itus.*
 demand (*noun*), *postulātum*, *ī, n.*
 demand (*verb*), *imperō*, *1, with dat. of person from whom; postulō*, *1, with ab and abl.*
 demented, *dēmēns*, *mentis.*
 deny, *negō*, *1.*
 depart, *discēdō*, *ere, cessī, cessum.*
 deprive, be deprived, *careō*, *ēre, caruī.*
 descendants, *posterī*, *ōrum, m.*
 desecrate, *polluō*, *ere, uī, ūtus.*
 deserve, *mereor*, *ērī, meritus.*
 design, *cōgitatīō*, *ōnis, f.; cōnsilium*, *lī, n.*
 desirable, *optābilis*, *e.*
 desire, *cupiō*, *ere, īvī or iī, itus; optō*, *1.*
 desirous, *cupidus*, *a, um.*
 despise, *contemnō*, *ere, tempsi, temptus.*
 despoil, *spoliō*, *1.*
 destroy, *dēleō*, *ēre, ēvī, ētus; exstinguō*, *ere, stīnxī, stīnctus.*
 detain, *teneō*, *ēre, uī, tentus; dētineō*, *ēre, uī, tentus.*
 determine, *cōstituō*, *ere, uī, ūtus.*
 devise, *cōgitō*, *1.*

devote, dō, dare, dedī, datus; dēdō, ere, dēdidī, dēditus.	disregard, neglegō, ere, lēxī, lēctus.
devoted, dēditus, a, um.	distance, at a distance, procul, in locis longinquīs.
devotion, studium, dī, n.	disturb, commoveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus; perturbō, l.
dictator, dictātor, ōris, m.	divide, dīvidō, ere, vīdī, vīsus.
die, morior, morī, mortuus.	divine, dīvīnus, a, um.
die, be put to death, <i>pass. of</i> interficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus.	do, faciō, ere, fēcī, factus.
die, perish. pereō, īre, iī, itūrus.	be done, happen, fiō, fierī, factus.
difference, there is a difference, interest, esse, fuit, futū- rum.	be done, go on, <i>pass. of</i> gerō, ere, gessī, gestus.
difficult, difficilis, e.	do not (<i>in prohibitions</i>), nōlī nōlīte, <i>with inf.</i>
difficulty, difficultās, tātis, f.	doubt, dubitō, l.
diminish, infringō, ere, frēgī. fractus; dēminuō, ere, uī, ūtus.	there is no doubt, nōn est dubium.
direction, pars, partis, f.	doubtful, dubius, a, um.
in that direction, in eam partem.	draw up (<i>of soldiers</i>), instruō, ere, strūxī, strūctus; (<i>of</i> <i>ships</i>), subducō, ere, dūxī, ductus.
disaster, calamitās, tātis, f.	dreadful, atrōx, atrōcis.
disclose, aperiō, īre, uī, apertus.	drive, pellō, ere, pepulī, pulsus.
discover, reperiō, īre, repperī. reptus.	drive back, repellō, ere, rep- pulī, repulsus.
disembark (<i>trans.</i>), ex nāvī (ibus) expōnō, ere, posuī, positus; (<i>intrans.</i>), ex nāvī (ibus) ēgredior, ī, gressus.	driver (<i>of a carriage</i>), raedā- rius, rī, m.; (<i>of a chariot</i>), aurīga, ae, m.
disgraceful, turpis, e.	dry, aridus, a, um.
dislodge, submoveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus.	dry land, aridum, ī, n.
dismiss, dīmittō, ere, mīsi, missus.	due, dēbitus, a, um.
dismount, ex equō (is) dēsiliō, īre, uī, sultus.	Dumnorix, Dumnorīx, rīgis, m.
disorder, tumultus, ūs, m.	dust, pulvis, veris, m.
	duty, officium, cī, n.
	do one's duty, officium praestō, āre, stitī, stitum.

E

each (*of any number*), quisque, quaeque, quidque *and* quodque.

eager, cupidus, a, um.

eagle, aquila, ae, *f*.

eagle-bearer, aquilifer, erī, *m*.

early (*in the day*), māne.

easily, facile.

easy, facilis, e.

eat, edō, ere, ēdī, ēsus.

effort, labor, ōris, *m*.

eight, octō.

either . . . or, aut . . . aut.

elect, faciō, ere, fēcī, factus; creō, 1.

election, elections, comitia, ōrum, *n*.

eloquence, ēloquentia, ae, *f*.

else (*adj.*), reliquus, a, um.

nothing else, nihil aliud.

else (*adv.*), aliter.

eminent, clārus, a, um.

encounter, occurrō, ere, currī, cursūrus, *with dat.*; subeō, īre, īī, itus, *with acc.*

encourage, hortor, 1.

end, finis, is, *m*.

each end, utraque pars, utrīusque partis, *f*.

endless, sempiternus, a, um.

endurable, tolerābilis, e.

endure, ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus.

enemy (*in war*), hostis, is, *m*;
hostēs, ium; (*personal*), inimīcus, ī, *m*.

engine of war, tormentum, ī, *n*.
enjoy, fruor, ī, frūctus.

enlist, enroll, cōnscribō, ere, scripsī, scriptus.

enough (*adv. and indecl. noun*), satis.

entreat, adpellō, 1; ōrō, 1.

entreaty, rogātus, ūs, *m*.

entrust, permittō, ere, mīsī, missus.

envoy, lēgātus, ī, *m*.

equal, pār, paris; īdem, eadem, idem.

equinox, aequinoctī diēs, diēī, *m*.

escape, effugiō, ere, fūgī.

especially, potissimum.

establish, cōstituō, ere, uī, ūtus.

become established, inveterāscō, ere, rāvī.

even, etiam.

not even, ne . . . quidem.

even if, etsī, etiam sī.

ever, umquam.

every, all, omnis, e.

every, each, quisque, quaeque, quidque *and* quodque.

everybody, omnēs, ium, *m*.

everything, omnia, omnes res.

every part of, tōtus, a, um; omnis, e.

every sort of, omnis, e.

in every way, omnī modō.

evidence, indicium, cī, *n*.

give evidence, indicō, 1.

evident, it is evident, cōstat.

evil, malum, *i, n.*
 examination, quaestiō, ōnis, *f.*
 except, praeter, *prep. with acc.;*
 nisi (*conj.*).
 exchange, inter sē dare (dō,
 dare, dedī, datus).
 exclude, sēcernō, ere, crēvī,
 crētus.
 excuse, purgō, *l.*
 exercise, exercitātiō, ōnis, *f.*
 exile, place of exile, exsilium,
 lī, *n.*
 exile (*verb*), exterminō, *l.*
 exist, sum, esse, fuī, futūrus.
 expiate, expiō, *l.*
 expose, prōciō, ere, iēcī, iectus.
 exposed, apertus, *a, um.*
 extend, pertinēō, ēre, uī.
 extraordinary, eximius, *a, um;*
 singulāris, *e.*

F

face to face, adversus, *a, um.*
 fact, rēs, rei, *f.*
 fall, cadō, ere, cecidī, cāsūrus.
 fall on, fall in with, incidō,
 ere, cidi, cāsūrus.
 fall upon, overwhelm, op-
 primō, ere, pressī, pressus.
 falsely, falsē.
 far, longē.
 far and near, longē latēque.
 so far, adhūc.
 farm, fundus, *i, m.*
 farther, ulterior, *ius.*
 fasten, be fastened to, in-
 haereō, ēre, haesī, haesū-
 rus, *with dat., or in and abl.*

favor, probō, *l.*
 in favor of, prō, *prep. with*
 abl.
 favorable, secundus, *a, um.*
 fear (*noun*), timor, ōris, *m.;*
 metus, ūs, *m.*
 fear (*verb*), timeō, ēre, timuī;
 metuō, ere, uī, ūtus.
 feel, sentiō, īre, sēnsī, sēnsus.
 feeling, sēnsus, ūs, *m.*
 feelings, animus, *i, m.*
 fellow, homō, minis, *m.*
 fellow citizen, cīvis, *is, m.*
 fellow soldier, commilitō, ōnis,
 m.
 few, paucī, *ae, a.*
 not a few, complūrēs, *ia*
 or a.
 fickleness, levitās, tātis, *f.*
 field, ager, agrī, *m.*
 fiercely, ācritēr.
 fifteen, quīndecim, *XV.*
 fight (*noun*), pugna, *ae, f.;*
 proelium, lī, *n.*
 fight (*verb*), pugnō, *l;* con-
 tendō, ere, tendī, tentus;
 congregior, *i, gressus.*
 fill, compleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus.
 finally, dēnique, postrēmō.
 find, inveniō, īre, vēnī, ventus;
 nancīscor, *i, nactus or*
 nactus.
 find out, reperiō, īre, repperī,
 reptus.
 finish, end, cōnficiō, ere, fēcī,
 fectus.
 finish, make perfect, per-
 ficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus.

fire, set fire to, incendō, ere,
cendī, cēnsus.

firebrand, malleolus, i, m.

first, primus, a, um.

at first, primō.

in the first place, primum.

fit, idōneus, a, um.

five, quīnque, V.

flank, latus, eris, n.

flee, fugiō, ere, fūgī, fugitūrus.

flight, fuga, ae, f.

put to flight, in fugam dō,
dare, dedī, datus.

foe, *see* enemy.

follow, sequor, i, secūtus; In-
sequor.

foolish, stultus, a, um.

foot, pēs, pedis, m.

on foot, pedibus.

for (*conj.*), nam, enim (*post-*
pos.)

for, in behalf of, prō, *prep.*
with abl.

for, toward, in, *prep. with acc.*;
often expressed by dat. case.

forbid, veto, āre, uī, itus. *See*
§ 61.

force, vis, vis, f.

forces, cōpia, ārum, f.

forest, silva, ae, f.

forget, oblivīscor, i, oblītus.

forgetful, oblītus, a, um.

form, make, faciō, ere, fēcī,
factus; (*of plans*) capiō,
ere, cēpī, captus.

former, early, pristinus, a, um.

fortify, mūniō, ire, ivī or iī,
itus.

fortunate, beātus, a, um.

fortune, good fortune, fortūna,
ae, f.

fōrum, forum, i, n.

four, quattuor, IIII.

free, liber, era, erum.

free, unencumbered, expe-
ditus, a, um.

free, set free, liberō, 1.

freedom, libertās, tātis, f.

frenzied attacks, furōrēs, um,
m.

friend, amīcus, i, m.

friendship, amīcitia, ae, f.

frighten, terreō, ēre, uī, itus.

from, *sign of abl. case*; a or
ab, e or ex, dē, *preps. with*
abl.

front, frōns, frontis, f.

in front of, prō, *prep. with*
abl.; ante, *prep. with acc.*

full, plēnus, a, um.

funeral pyre, pyra, ae, f.

G

gain, cōnsequor, i, secūtus.

gain possession of, potior,
irī, itus, *with abl.*

gather, bring together, cōgō,
ere, cōēgī, cōāctus.

Gaul, Gallia, ae, f.

Gauls, Gallī, ōrum, m.

general, dux, ducis, m.; im-
perātor, ōris, m.

gentlemen (*of the jury*), iūdi-
cēs, um, m.

Germans, Germānī, ōrum, m.

get to, arrive, perveniō, ire,
vēnī, ventum.

get possession of, potior, irī,
itus, *with abl.*

get (oneself) ready, com-
parō, ī, *with reflexive.*

give, dō, dare, dedī, datus.

give up, *see surrender.*

give opportunity, potestā-
tem faciō, ere, fēcī, factus.

glad, laetus, a, um.

be glad, gaudeō, ēre, gavīsus.

glory, glōria, ae, *f.*

go, eō, ire, ivī *or* ii, itum.

go back, redeō, ire, ii, itum.

go out, exeō, ire, ii, itum.

go on, be done, *pass. of* gerō,
ere, gessī, gestus.

god, deus, deī, *m.*

going to, § 98.

good, bonus, a, um.

good will, benevolentia, ae, *f.*

grain (*threshed*), frūmentum,
ī, *n.*; (*growing or un-*
threshed), frūmenta, ōrum,
n.

grain supply, rēs frūmen-
tāria, rei frūmentāriae, *f.*

gratitude, grātia, ae, *f.*

great, magnus, a, um.

greatly, magnopere.

grief, dolor, ōris, *m.*; lūctus,
ūs, *m.*

grove, nemus, oris, *n.*

guard (*noun*), praesidium,
dī, *n.*

off one's guard, inopināns,
antis.

on guard, in statīōne (ibus).

guard (*verb*), custōdiō, ire, ivī
or ii, itus.

guilty, nocēns, entis.

prove guilty, coarguō, ere,
uī, ūtus.

H

habit, cōsuētūdō, dinis, *f.*

Haeduan, Haeduus, a, um.

Haeduans, Haeduī, ōrum, *m.*

hand, manus, ūs, *f.*

on the other hand, contrā.

be at hand, adsum, esse, fuī,
futūrus.

happen, accidit, ere, accidit;
fit, fierī, factum est.

happy, laetus, a, um.

harbor, portus, ūs, *m.*

harm, dētrīmentum, ī, *n.*

hasten, contendō, ere, tendī,
tentus; properō, ī.

hastily, repente.

hate, ōdī, ōsūrus; be hated, in
odiō sum.

hatred, odium, dī, *n.*

have, habeō, ēre, uī, itus.

have in mind, propōnō, ere,
posuī, positus, *with reflex.*

have to, § 105.

he, is, hīc, ille. *Usually not*
expressed.

hear, hear of, audiō, ire, ivī *or*
ii, itus.

height, altitūdō, dinis, *f.*

help (*noun*), auxilium, lī, *n.*

help (*verb*), adiuvo, āre, iūvī,
iūtus.

helpful, *usuī, dat. of usus.*
 Helvetians, *Helvētīi, ōrum, m.*
 here, *hīc (adv.). When used with a noun, hīc, haec, hoc.*
 hesitate, *dubitō, 1, with inf.*
 hide, *abdō, ere, didī, ditus.*
 high (*of position*), *superus, a, um.*
 (*of extent*), *altus, a, um.*
 (*of wind or tide*), *magnus, a, um.*
 highway robber, *latrō, ōnis, m.*
 himself, *ipse (intensive); suī (reflexive).*
 hinder, *impediō, ire, īvī or īi, itus.*
 hire, *condūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus.*
 his, *eius; suus, a, um (reflex.).*
 hold, *teneō, ēre, uī, tentus.*
 (*of an office*), *gerō, ere, gessī, gestus.*
 (*of a council*), *habeō, ēre, uī, itus.*
 holy, *sāctus, a, um.*
 home, *domus, ūs, f.*
 at home, *domī.*
 from home, *domō.*
 (*to one's*) home, *domum.*
 honor, *honor, ōris, m.; decus, oris, n.*
 honorable, *honestus, a, um.*
 hope (*noun*), *spēs, eī, f.*
 hope (*verb*), *spērō, 1.*
 horse, *equus, ī, m.*
 horseman, *eques, itis, m.*
 hostage, *obses, idis, m.*
 hostile, *infēstus, a, um.*

hour, *hōra, ae, f.*
 house, *domus, ūs, f.*
 how, in what degree, *quam; in what way, quō modō, quem ad modum.*
 how many, *quot, quam multī, ae, a.*
 how much, *quantus, a, um; as subst., quantum, ī, n.*
 how often, *quotiēns.*
 however (*adv.*), *quamvīs.*
 however (*conj.*), *autem (postpos.).*
 human, *humānus, a, um.*
 hundred, *centum, C.*
 hurl, *coniciō, ere, iēcī, iectus.*
 hurry (*intrans.*), *contendō, ere, tendī, tentus; properō, 1.*
 hurry off (*trans.*), *rapiō, ere, uī, raptus.*

I

I, *ego, meī. Usually not expressed.*
 if, *sī.*
 if not, *nisi.*
 if only, *dum modo.*
 if (*in indirect questions*), *num, -ne.*
 but if, *quod sī; (after another condition), sīn.*
 ignorant, *ignārus, a, um.*
 illustrious, *clārus, a, um.*
 ill will, *odium, dī, n.*
 imaginary, *fictus, a, um.*
 immortal, *immortālis, e.*

import, importō, 1.
 importance, it is of importance,
 rēfert.
 important, gravis, e.
 impunity, impūnitās, tātis, *f.*
 with impunity, impūne.
 in, in, *prep. with abl.*
 incite, sollicitō, 1.
 increase (*trans.*), augeō, ēre,
 auxī, auctus.
 (*intrans.*), crēscō, ere, crēvī,
 crētus.
 incredible, incrēdibilis, e.
 incur, subeō, īre, ii, itus.
 indicate, significō, 1.
 induce, addūcō, ere, dūxī,
 ductus.
 infantry, peditēs, um, *m.* ; pe-
 ditātus, ūs, *m.*
 inflame, inflammō, 1.
 inflict, inferō, ferre, intulī, in-
 lātus.
 influence, auctōritās, tātis, *f.*
 inform, certiōrem (-ēs) faciō,
 ere, fēcī, factus.
 inhabit, incolō, ere, uī.
 injury, iniūria, ae, *f.*
 innocent, innocēns, entis.
 inquire, quaerō, ere, sīvī or iī,
 sītus.
 inspire, iniciō, ere, iēcī, iectus,
 with *dat. of person and*
 acc. of thing.
 intention, cōnsilium, lī, *n.*
 interests of state, rēs pūblica,
 reī pūblīcae, *f.*
 best interests of state,
 summa rēs pūblica.

it is to the interest, inter-
 est, interesse, interfuit
 (§ 188).
 intimate friend, familiāris,
 is, *m.*
 into, in, *prep. with acc.*
 investigate, search into,
 quaerō, ere, sīvī, or sīī,
 sītus.
 investigate inspect, per-
 spiciō, ere, spexī, spec-
 tus.
 investigation, quaestiō, ōnis, *f.*
 invincible, invictus, a, um.
 island, īnsula, ae, *f.*
 it, hīc, is.
 Italy, Ītalia, ae, *f.*
 its, eius ; suus, a, um (*reflex.*).
 itself, ipse, ipsa, ipsum.

J

javelin, pīlum, ī, *n.*
 join together (*intrans.*), con-
 currō, ere, currī, cursum.
 journey, iter, itineris, *n.*
 joy, laetitia, ae, *f.*
 judge, pass judgment, iū-
 dicō, 1.
 jump down, dēsiliō, īre, uī,
 sultus.
 Jupiter, Juppiter, Jovis, *m.*
 juror, iūdex, dicis, *m.*
 act as juror, iūdicō, 1.
 jury, gentlemen of the jury,
 iūdicēs, um, *m.*
 just as, sicut.
 justly, iūre.

K

- keep, teneō, ēre, uī, tentus.
 keep, hold, contineō, ēre, uī, tentus.
 keep, prevent, prohibeō, ēre, uī, itus.
 kill, interficiō, ere, fēci, fectus; occido, ere, cīdī, cisus.
 killing, caedēs, is, *f*.
 kindly (*adv.*), liberāliter.
 knight, eques, itis, *m*.
 know, sciō, īre, īvī, itus.
 know, have learned, cognōvī.
 not know, ignōrō, 1; nesciō, īre, īvī.
 known, nōtus, a, um.

L

- lacking, be lacking, dēsum, esse, fuī, futūrus.
 land, ager, agrī, *m*.
 large, magnus, a, um.
 large number, multitudō, inis, *f*.
 in large numbers, frequentēs.
 last (*adv.*), proximē.
 at last, tandem.
 later (*adv.*), postea.
 latter, the latter, hīc, haec, hoc.
 law, lēx, lēgis, *f*.
 lay aside, dēpōnō, ere, posuī, positus.
 lay down (*of arms*), ponō, ere, posuī, positus.
 lead, dūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus.

- lead across, trādūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus.
 lead back, redūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus.
 lead out, ēdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus.
 leader, dux, ducis, *m*.
 leading man, prīnceps, cipis, *m*.
 learn, cognōscō, ere, ōvī, itus; reperiō, īre, repperī, repertus.
 leave, relinquō, ere, liquī, lic-tus; discēdō, ere, cessī, cessūrus, followed by ab with *abl*.
 legion, legiō, ōnis, *f*.
 less, minor (us), minōris.
 let, § 138.
 liberty, libertās, ātis, *f*.
 license, licentia, ae, *f*.
 lie in wait, insidior, 1.
 lieutenant, lēgātus, ī, *m*.
 life, vīta, ae, *f*.
 limb, membrum, ī, *n*.
 line of battle, aciēs, ēī, *f*.
 listen to, audiō, īre, īvī or īī, itus.
 little, parvus, a, um.
 a little while, breve tempus, oris, *n*.
 for a little while, paulisper.
 live, vīvō, ere, vixī, vīctus.
 live in, inhabit, incolō, ere, uī.
 lives, vīta, ae, *f*. (*in sing.*).
 living, vivus, a, um.
 loathsome, taeter, tra, trum.

long, longus, a, um.

for a long time, diū.

now for a long time, iam diū.

look at, spectō, 1.

lose, āmittō, ere, mīsi, missus.

loud, magnus, a, um.

low, inferus, a, um.

lowest, those of the lowest
class, infimī, ōrum.

M

mad, furiōsus, a, um.

madness, furor, ōris, *m.*; āmen-
tia, ae, *f.*

maid-servant, ancilla, ae, *f.*

make, faciō, ere, fēcī, factus.

make (*of a plan*), capiō, ere,
cēpi, captus; ineō, inīre,
iniī, initus.

make war, bellum faciō, *or*
bellum īferō, īferre, in-
tulī, inlātus, *both with*
dat.

make use of, ūtor, ī, ūsus.

man, homō, hominis, *m.*; vir,
virī, *m.*

men, soldiers, militēs, um, *m.*

a man who, is quī.

many, multī, ae, a; complūrēs,
a (*or ia*).

marauder, latrō, ōnis, *m.*

march, iter, itineris, *n.*

march, make a march, iter
faciō, ere, fēcī, factus.

Mark, Mārcus, ī, *m.*

Marseilles, Massilia, ae, *f.*

of Marseilles, Massiliēnsis, *e.*

master, dominus, ī, *m.*

material, māteria, ae, *f.*

matter, rēs, rei, *f.*

meet, (*trans.*) conveniō, ire,
vēnī, ventus, *with acc.*;
occurrō, ere, currī, cur-
sūrus, *with dat.*

mention, nōminō, 1.

mercy, misericordia, ae, *f.*

mere, ipse, a, um.

message, nūntius, tī, *m.*

messenger, nūntius, tī, *m.*

Meuse, Mosa, ae, *f.*

miles, milia passuum.

military matters, rēs militāris,
rei militāris, *f.*

Milo, Milō, ōnis, *m.*

mind, mēns, mentis, *f.*; ani-
mus, ī, *m.*

have in mind, prōpōnō, ere.
posuī, positus, *with dat. of*
reflexive.

misdeed, facinus, oris, *n.*

misfortune, calamitās, ātis, *f.*

mistaken, be mistaken, errō, 1.

moderate, mediocris, *e.*

monster, bēlua, ae, *f.*

month, mēnsis, is, *f.*

monument, monumentum, ī, *n.*

moon, lūna, ae, *f.*

more (*adj.*), plūs, plūris.

more (*adv.*), magis.

moreover, autem (*postpos.*).

motive, causa, ae, *f.*

move, moveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus.

moved, disturbed, commōtus,
a, um.

much (*adj.*), multus, a, um.

much (*adv.*), multum ; *in comparisons*, multō.

too much, nimium.

mud, lutum, ī, *n.*

mullet, mūllus, ī, *m.*

multitude, multitūdō, inis, *f.*

murder (*noun*), caedēs, is, *f.*

murder (*verb*), trucidō, ī.

must, *see* § 105.

N

name (*noun*), nōmen, inis, *n.*

name (*verb*), nōminō, ī.

narrow, angustus, a, um.

nation, nātiō, ōnis, *f.*

nature, nātūra, ae, *f.*

nay even, immō vērō.

near at hand, be near at hand,

adsum, esse, fuī, futūrus.

nearer (*adj.*), propior, ius.

nearer (*adv.*), propius.

nearly, ferē.

necessary, necessārius, a, um.

it is necessary, opus est ;

necesse est. *See* § 105.

need, *see* § 105.

neglect, neglegō, ere, lēxī,

lēctus.

neighbor, finitimus, ī, *m.*

neither . . . nor, neque . . .

neque ; nec . . . nec.

never, numquam.

nevertheless, tamen.

new, novus, a, um.

news, nūntius, tī, *m.*

next, proximus, a, um.

on the next day, posterō diē.

night (*adj.*), nocturnus, a, um.

night (*noun*), nox, noctis, *f.*

by night, noctū.

no, nūllus, a um.

no one, nobody, nēmō, *m.*

and *f.*, *gen.* nūllius, *dat.*

nēminī, *acc.* nēminem, *abl.*

nūllō.

noise, strepitus, ūs, *m.*

not, nōn ; *in neg. purpose*,

wish, or command, nē ; *in*

questions, *see* § 19.

and not, neque.

not only . . . but also, nōn

sōlum . . . sed etiam.

not yet, nōndum.

notable, praeclārus, a, um ;

insignis, e.

nothing, nihil (*indecl.*).

notice animadvertō, ere, vertī,

versus.

now, at the present time,

nunc ; by this time, iam.

number, numerus, ī, *m.*

O

obscure, obscūrus, a, um.

obtain a request, impetrō, ī.

occur, occurrō, ere, curri, cur-

sūrus.

of, concerning, dē, *prep. with*

abl.

offer, offerō, ferre, obtulī, ob-

lātus ; *of terms*, ferō.

office, magistrātus, ūs, *m.*

honor, ōris, *m.*

often, saepe.

on, in, *prep. with abl.*

once, at once, statim.

one, ūnus, a, um.

one . . . another, alius . . .

alius.

one who, is quī.

only (*adv.*), modo.

only one, sōlus, a, um.

openly, aperte; palam.

opinion, opīniō, ōnis, *f.*

opponent, adversārius, rī, *m.*

opportunity, facultās, ātis, *f.*

oppose, resistō, ere, stitī.

oppress, premō, ere, pressī,
pressus.

or, aut; *in questions*, an.

or not, *see* § 28.

orator, ōrātor, ōris, *m.*

order, iubeō, ēre, iussī, iussus,

with acc. and inf.; imperō,

1, *with dat.*, ut *and subj.*

in order that, ut *with subj.*

ordinary, mediocris, *e.*

other, another, alius, a, ud.

on the other hand, autem
(*postpositive*).

others, the remaining,
cēterī, ae, a.

otherwise, aliter.

ought, dēbeō, ēre, uī, itus;

oportet, ēre, oportuit
(§ 106).

our, noster, tra, trum.

our men, nostrī, ōrum, *m.*

outcome, exitus, ūs, *m.*

outcry, clāmor, ōris, *m.*

outlaw, latrō, ōnis, *m.*

act the outlaw, latrōcinor, 1.

overlook, omittō, ere, mīsi,
missus.

overthrow, ēvertō, ere, tī, ver-
sus.

overwhelm, opprimō, ere, pres-
sī, pressus.

own, *reflex. poss. adj., or gen.*
of ipse.

P

pack-animal, iūmentum, ī, *n.*

pain, dolor, ōris, *m.*

pardon, ignōscō, ere, nōvī, nō-
tus.

parricide, parricīda, ae, *m.*
and f.

part, pars, partis, *f.*

party, pars, partis, *f.*

pass judgment, iūdicō, 1.

patriotic, amāns rei pūblicae.

peace, pāx, pācis, *f.*

people, populus, ī, *m.*

their people (*reflex.*), suī,
suōrum.

perceive, perspiciō, ere, spexī,
spectus.

perform, perfungor, fungī,
fūctus.

perhaps, fortasse; forte.

peril, periculum, ī, *n.*

perish, pereō, īre, iī, itūrus.

permission, it is permitted,
licet, licēre, licuit, *with dat.*
and inf.

permit, patior, patī, passus,
with acc. and inf.; per-
mittō, ere, mīsi, missus,
with dat., ut, *and subj.*

peroration, perorātiō, ōnis, *f.*

personal enemy, inimicus, ī, *m.*

- persuade, persuādeō, ēre, suāsī, suāsum, *with dat.*, ut, and subj.
 picked, dēlēctus, a, um.
 pick out, dēligō, ere, lēgī, lēctus.
 pitch camp, castra pōnō, ere, posuī, positus.
 place (*noun*), locus, ī, m.; *plu.* loca, ōrum, n.
 place (*verb*), conlocō, 1; pōnō, ere, posuī, positus.
 place (*in different positions*), dispōnō.
 plague, pestis, is, f.
 plainly, plānē.
 plan (*noun*), cōnsilium, lī, n.
 plan, arrange, cōstituō, ere, uī, ūtus.
 plan, think (of), cōgitō, 1.
 pleasure, voluptās, ātis, f.
 take pleasure, *passive of* dēlectō, 1.
 plot, ambushade, insidiae, ārum.
 plot against, insidior, 1, *with dat.*
 plotter, insidiātor, ōris, m.
 plunder, praedor, 1.
 point, at this point, hīc.
 pollute, maculō, 1.
 Pompey, Pompēius, pēī, m.
 possession, gain possession of, potior, īrī, itus.
 power, ability, facultas, tātis, f.; power, might, potentia, ae, f.; heavenly power, numen, inis, n.; military power, imperium, rī, n.
 practice, exercitātiō, ōnis, f.
 praetor, praetor, ōris, m.
 praetorship, praetūra, ae, f.
 praise, laus, laudis, f.
 pray (*verb*), vōtum faciō, ere, fēcī, factum.
 pray (*in commands and questions*), tandem.
 prefer, mālō, mālle, mālui.
 prepare, comparō, 1; parō, 1.
 prepared, parātus, a, um.
 preserve, cōservō, 1.
 press hard, premō, ere, pressī, pressus.
 pretend, simulō, 1.
 prevail, valeō, ēre, uī, itūrus.
 prevent, prohibeō, ēre, uī, itus, *with inf.*
 not prevent, nōn dēterreō, ēre, uī, itus, *with quīn and subj.*
 previous, superior, ius; prior, us.
 private, privātus, a, um.
 privilege, give the privilege, potestātem faciō.
 profit, ēmolumentum, ī, n.
 prolong, prōdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus.
 proof, indicium, cī, n.
 property, rēs, reī, f.
 propose (*of laws or investigations*), ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus.
 prosperous, flōrēns, entis.
 protect, dēfendō, ere, dī, fēnsus; tueor, ērī.
 protection, praesidium, dī, n.

prove, probō, 1.

prove guilty, coarguō, ere,
uī, ūtus.

provided, provided that, dum.
§ 229.

province, prōvincia, ae, *f*.

provision, make provision,
prōvideō, ēre, vidī, vīsus.

provocation, without provo-
cation, ultrō.

public, pūblicus, a, um.

public assembly, cōntiō, ōnis, *f*.

public welfare, rēs pūblica,
rei pūblicae, *f*.

punish, pūniō, īre, ivī, ītus;
vindicō, 1; ulcīscor, ī,
ultus.

punishment, supplicium, cī, *n*.;
poena, ae, *f*.

purpose, mēns, mentis, *f*.

put down, conquer, superō, 1.

put in charge, praeficiō, ere,
fēcī, fectus.

put to death, interficiō, ere,
fēcī, fectus.

put to flight, fugō, 1.

put under the power, per-
mittō, ere, mīsī, missus.

Q

quickly, celeriter.

quietly, stay quietly, quiēscō,
ere, quiēvī, ētus.

R

raise, excitō, 1.

rampart, vāllum, ī, *n*.

rank, ōrdō, inis, *f*.

rather, potius.

reach, perveniō, īre, vēnī, ven-
tum, *with ad and acc.*

reach (*of land*), attingō, ere,
tigī, tāctus.

ready, parātus, a, um.

get ready, comparō, 1.

realize, intellegō, ere, lēxī,
lēctus.

reason, causa, ae, *f*.

for this reason, quā dē
causā.

reasonable, iūstus, a, um.

reasonableness, ratiō, ōnis, *f*.

recall, revocō, 1.

receive, accipiō, ere, cēpī, cep-
tus.

receive under protection, in
fidem recipiō.

recently, nūper.

reckless, audāx, ācis.

recklessness, audācia, ae, *f*.;
tēmeritās, ātis, *f*.

regard, in regard to, dē *with*
abl.

region, regiō, ōnis, *f*.

reject, repudiō, 1.

rejoice, laetor, 1; gaudeō, ēre,
gāvīsus sum.

relief, subsidium, dī, *n*.

remain, maneō, ēre, mānsī,
mānsūrus.

it remains, restat, āre, stitit.

remove, tollō, ere, sustulī, sub-
lātus; removeō, ēre, mōvī,
mōtus.

renown, glōria, ae, *f*.

- repair, reficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus.
 repeatedly, saepe.
 repent, paenitet, ēre, uit.
 § 186.
 reply, respondeō, ēre, spondi,
 spōnsus.
 report, nūntiō, 1.
 report back, renūntiō, 1.
 republic, rēs pūblica, rei pū-
 blica, f.
 reputation, opīniō, ōnis, f.
 request, obtain a request, im-
 petrō, 1.
 reserve, reservō, 1.
 resist, resistō, ere, stitī, *with*
 dat.
 rest of, remaining, reliquus, a,
 um.
 restore, restituō, ere, uī, ūtus ;
 reddō, ere, didī, ditus.
 restrain, retineō, ēre, uī, ten-
 tus ; prohibeō, ēre, uī, itus ;
 reprimō, ere, pressī, pres-
 sus.
 result, exitus, ūs, m.
 retinue, comitātus, ūs, m.
 retreat (*noun*), receptus, ūs, m.
 retreat (*verb*), recipiō, ere,
 cēpī, ceptus, *with reflexive*.
 return (*noun*), reditus, ūs, m.
 return, give back, reddō, ere,
 didī, ditus.
 return, go back, redeō, īre, iī,
 itum ; revertor, ī, reversus,
 in return for, prō *with abl.*
 revolt, tumultus, ūs, m.
 reward, praemium, mī, n. ;
 fructus, ūs, m.
 Rhine, Rhēnus, ī, m.
 right (*adj.*), fair, aequus, a,
 um.
 right (*in the sight of the*
 gods), fās, n., *indecl. noun*.
 rightly, iūre ; rēctē.
 risk, periculū, ī, n.
 river, flūmen, inis, n.
 road, via, ae, f. ; iter, itineris,
 n.
 robber, latrō, ōnis, m.
 Roman, Rōmānus, a, um.
 Rome, Rōma, ae, f.
 rostra, rōstra, ōrum, n.
 rule, regō, ere, rēxī, rēctus.
 rumor, rūmor, ōris, m.

S

- sacred, sāctus, a, um.
 saddle, ephippium, pī, n.
 provided with a saddle,
 ephippiātus, a, um.
 safe, incolumis, e ; tūtus, a,
 um.
 safely, tūtō ; *translate when*
 possible by adj. safe.
 safety, salūs, ūtis, f.
 sail (*verb*), nāvīgō, 1.
 sake, for the sake of, causā,
 following its gen.
 same, idem, eadem, idem.
 satisfy, expleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus.
 savage, ferus, a, um.
 save, cōservō, 1.
 saved, salvus, a, um.
 savior, cōservātor, ōris, m.
 say, dicō, ere, dīxī, dictus.
 sea, mare, is, n.

seacoast, <i>ōra maritima, orae maritimae, f.</i>	set fire to, <i>incendō, ere, cendi, cēnsus.</i>
secure (<i>adj.</i>), <i>tūtus, a, um.</i>	set out, <i>proficīscor, i, fectus.</i>
secure (<i>verb</i>), <i>cōsequor, i, secūtus; conciliō, 1; nancīscor, i, nactus.</i>	set sail, <i>solvō, ere, solvi, solūtus, with or without navem (is).</i>
see, see to it, <i>videō, ēre, vīdī, vīsus.</i>	settle (<i>down</i>), <i>cōnsīdō, ere, sēdī, sessūrus.</i>
seek, <i>petō, ere, ivī (ii), itus.</i>	seventh, <i>septimus, a, um.</i>
seek out, seek for, <i>expetō, ere, ivī (ii), itus.</i>	several, <i>complūrēs, a (or ia).</i>
seem, <i>videor, ērī, vīsus.</i>	shape, <i>figūra, ae, f.</i>
seize, <i>occupō, 1; comprehendō, ere, hendi, hēnsus.</i>	shield, <i>scūtum, i, n.</i>
self, myself, etc. <i>If emphatic, ipse, a, um; if reflexive, mei, tuī, suī, etc.</i>	ship, <i>nāvis, is, f.</i>
senate, <i>senātus, ūs, m.</i>	war ship, <i>nāvis longa.</i>
senate-house, <i>cūria, ae, f.</i>	short, <i>brevis, e.</i>
senator, <i>senātor, ōris, m.</i>	should, §§ 106, 23.
send, <i>mittō, ere, mīsī, missus.</i>	shout, shouting, <i>clāmor, ōris, m.</i>
send ahead, <i>praemittō, ere, mīsī, missus.</i>	show, <i>ostendō, ere, dī, tus; indicō, 1; doceō, ēre, uī, doctus.</i>
send back, <i>remittō, ere, mīsī, missus.</i>	shrewdness, <i>cōnsilium, lī, n.</i>
send out or away (<i>in different directions</i>), <i>dīmittō, ere, mīsī, missus.</i>	shrine, <i>sacrārium, rī, n.</i>
sensitive, <i>tener, era, erum.</i>	shudder, <i>perhorrēscō, ere, horruī.</i>
separate, <i>divellō, ere, velli, volsus.</i>	sight, <i>cōspectus, ūs, m.</i>
serious, <i>gravis, e.</i>	since, <i>cum, with subj.; quoniam, with indic.</i>
servant, <i>servus, i, m.</i>	sister, <i>soror, ōris, f.</i>
service, <i>officium, cī, n.; meritum, i, n.</i>	sit, <i>sedeō, ēre, sēdī.</i>
service, be of service, <i>prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī, prōfutūrus.</i>	situation, <i>locus, i, m.; plu. loca, ōrum, n.</i>
	skilful, skilled, <i>perītus, a, um, with gen.</i>
	sky, <i>caelum, ī, n.</i>
	slave, <i>servus, i, m.</i>
	slay, <i>occīdō, ere, cidī, cīsus.</i>
	slight, <i>parvus, a, um.</i>

- so (*with adjs. and advs.*), tam ;
 (*with verbs*), ita, sic.
 and so, itaque.
 so far, adhūc.
 so great, tantus, a, um.
 so long, tam diū.
 so long as, dum, *with indic.*
 so many, tot, tam multi, ae,
 a.
 so much (*as noun*), tantum,
 ī, n.
 so often, totiens.
 soldier, miles, itis, m.
 some (*adj.*), aliquī, qua, quod ;
 nōn nūllus, a, um ; *plu. as*
 subst.
 some one, something (*subst.*),
 aliquis, aliquid.
 some . . . others, aliī . . . aliī.
 some in one direction, others
 in another, aliī aliam in
 partem.
 there are some who, sunt
 quī.
 some (*adv.*), *with numerals*,
 circiter.
 sometimes, nōn numquam.
 soon, mox ; brevī tempore.
 as soon as, simul atque.
 sort, genus, eris, n.
 of this sort, eius modī.
 spare, parcō, ere, peperci or
 parsī, parsūrus.
 speak, dicō, ere, dixī, dictus.
 special investigation or court,
 nova quaestiō, novae
 quaestiōnis, f.
 speech, ōrātiō, ōnis, f.
- speed, celeritās, ātis, f.
 at full speed (*of horses*), in-
 citātus, a, um.
 spot, locus, ī, m.; *plu.* loca,
 ōrum, n.
 on the spot, in vēstīgiō.
 spy, spy out, speculor, l.
 stab, percutiō, ere, cussi, cus-
 sus.
 stain (*noun*), macula, ae, f.
 stain (*verb*), imbuō, ere, buī,
 būtus.
 stain (*of blood*), cruentō, l.
 stand, stō, stāre, steti, stātus.
 stand, get a footing, con-
 sistō, ere, stiti.
 stand in the way of, obsistō,
 ere, stiti, *with dat.*
 standard, signum, ī, n.
 star, stella, ae, f.
 start, proficiscor, ī, profectus.
 state, cīvītās, ātis, f.
 stay, maneō, ēre, mānsī, mān-
 sūrus.
 stay quietly, quiēscō, ere,
 quiēvī, ētus.
 still, now, nunc ; still, never-
 theless, tamen.
 stir up, concitō, l.
 store, be in store, *pass. of* prō-
 pōnō, ere, posuī, positus.
 storm, tempestās, ātis, f.; pro-
 cella, ae, f.
 strange, novus, a, um ; inūsī-
 tātus, a, um.
 strangeness, novitās, ātis, f.
 strength, rōbur, oris, n.
 strong, firmus, a, um.

subject, offerō, ferre, obtulī,
oblātus.

submit, cēdō, ere, cessī, cessus.

such, of such a sort, tālis, e ;

so great, tantus, a, um.

suddenly, subitō.

sufficient, satis (*indecl.*), *n.*

sufficiently, satis.

suitable, idōneus, a, um, *with*
dat. or ad with acc.

summon, vocō, 1.

sun, sōl, sōlis, *m.*

supplies, commeātus, ūs, *m.*

support, alō, ere, uī, altus *or*
alitus.

suppose, crēdō, ere, didī, ditus ;
existimō, 1.

sure, certus, a, um.

surely, certē.

surpass, superō, 1, *with acc.* ;
praestō, stāre, stitī, statu-
rus, *with dat.*

surrender (oneself), dēdō, ere,
dēdidī, dēditus, *with re-*
flex.

surround, circumfundō, ere,
fūdī, fūsus.

surround, get around, cir-
cumveniō, ire, vēnī, ventus.

suspect, suspicor, 1.

suspicion, suspiciō, ōnis, *f.*

Swabians, Suēbī, ōrum, *m.*

sword, gladius, dī, *m.*

T

take, bear, ferō, ferre, tulī,
lātus.

take, lead, dūcō, ere, dūxī,
ductus.

take, take up, capture, capiō,
ere, cēpī, captus.

take away, ēripiō, ere, uī,
reptus.

take by storm, expugnō, 1.

take place, fiō, fierī, factus.

take possession of, potior,
irī, itus.

tear, lacrima, ae, *f.*

tear up, ēripiō, ere, uī, reptus.

tell, dicō, ere, dixī, dictus ;
prōnūntiō, 1.

tell, show, doceō, ēre, uī,
doctus.

tempest, tempestās, ātis, *f.*

temple, templum, ī, *n.*

temptation, inlecebra, ae, *f.*

ten, decem.

tenth, decimus, a, um.

terms, condiciō, ōnis, *f., sing.*
or plu.

terrify, perterreō, ēre, uī, itus.

térriory, territories, ager,
agrī, *m.* ; finēs, ium, *m.*

than, quam, *or abl. after a*
comparative.

that (*dem. pro.*), ille, illa,
illud ; is, ea, id.

that, so that, in order that, ut ;
after verbs of fearing, nē ;
after negative expressions
of doubt, quīn.

that . . . not, introducing a
negative clause of purpose,
nē.

would that, utinam.

- their, suus, a, um (*reflex.*);
 eōrum.
 then, at that time, tum.
 then, therefore, igitur (*usu-*
 ally postpositive).
 there, in that place, ibi.
 therefore, itaque.
 thief, fūr, fūris, m.
 thing, rēs, rei, f.
 think, putō, 1; exīstimō, 1;
 arbitror, 1.
 think, feel, sentiō, īre, sēnsī,
 sēsus.
 think of, imagine, prōpōnō,
 ere, posuī, positus, *with*
 dat. of reflex.
 this, hīc, haec, hoc.
 though, cum; quamquam.
 thought, cōgitātiō, ōnis, f.
 thousand, mille (*indecl. adj.*).
 a thousand times, mīliēns.
 thousands, mīlia, ium, n.
 (*followed by partitive*
 gen.).
 threaten, minitor, 1; impen-
 deō, ēre; immineō, ēre;
 all with dat.
 threats, minae, ārum, f.
 three, trēs, ia.
 a period of three days, trī-
 duum, ī, n.
 three hundred, trecentī, ae,
 a.
 through, per, *prep. with acc.*
 throw, iaciō, ere, iēcī, iactus;
 coniciō, ere, iēcī, iectus.
 throw back, rēiciō, ere, iēcī,
 iectus.
 throw down, away, abiciō,
 ere, iēcī, iectus.
 thwart, obstō, stāre, stitī, stā-
 tūrus, *with dat.*
 Tiber, Tiberis, is, m.
 tide, aestus, ūs, m.
 tilling the land, agrī cultūra,
 ae, f.
 time, tempus, oris, n.
 on time, ad tempus.
 time and again, semel atque
 iterum.
 timid, timidus, a, um.
 to, ad, *prep. with acc.; often*
 translated by dat.
 to-day, hodiē.
 together with, unā cum, *with*
 abl.
 too (*adv.*), nimium.
 too great, nimius, a, um.
 toward (*in space*), ad *with*
 acc.; (in feeling), in or
 ergā with acc.
 town, oppidum, ī, n.
 trader, mercātor, ōris, m.
 tranquility, tranquillitās, ātis,
 f.
 transfer, trānsferō, ferre, tulī,
 lātus.
 transport, onerārius, a, um.
 travel, eō, īre, iī (ivī), itum.
 treachery, insidiae, ārum, f.
 trial, iūdicium, cī, n.
 tribe, gēns, gentis, f.
 tribune, tribūnus, ī, m.
 tribune of the people, tribū-
 nus plēbis.
 tributary, vectīgālis, e.

troops, cōpiae, ārum, *f.*
 true, vērus, *a, um.*
 truly, vērē.
 truth, vērum, *i, n.*
 try, cōnor, *1.*
 turn aside, dēvertō, *ere, verti,*
versus.

turn and flee, tergum vertō,
ere, verti, versum.
 twelve, duodecim; XII.
 two, duo, *ae, o.*

U

unacquainted, imperitus, *a,*
um, with gen.
 unbelievable, incrēdibilis, *e.*
 uncertain, incertus, *a, um.*
 uncle, avunculus, *i, m.*
 uncovered, nūdus, *a, um.*
 understand, intellegō, *ere, lēxi,*
lēctus.
 undertake, suscipiō, *ere, cēpi,*
ceptus.
 ungrateful, ingrātus, *a, um.*
 unharmed, incolumis, *e.*
 unjust, iniquus, *a, um.*
 unjustly, iniūriā.
 unless, nisi.
 unpopularity, odium, *dī, n.*
 unprepared, imparātus, *a, um.*
 unrestrained, solūtus, *a, um.*
 unskilful, imperitus, *a, um.*
 until, *ad, prep. with acc.*
 until, dum; quoad, *conj.;*
when equivalent to before,
priusquam. §§ 118-120.
 upright, integer, *gra, grum.*
 urge, hortor, *1; cohortor, 1.*

use (*noun*), ūsus, ūs, *m.*
 of use, ūsuī.
 use, make use of, ūtor, *i, ūsus.*
 useful, ūtilis, *e.*
 usual, ūsitātus, *a, um.*

V

vacant, lie vacant, vacō, *1.*
 vain, in vain, frūstrā.
 valor, virtūs, ūtis, *f.*
 vengeance, take vengeance on,
ulcīscor, i, ultus.
 verdict, iūdicium, *cī, n.*
 very (*adj.*), ipse, *a, um.*
 victory, victōria, *ae, f.*
 village, vīcus, *i, m.*
 violence, vīs (*vīs*), *f.*
 virtue, virtūs, ūtis, *f.*
 voice, vōx, vōcis, *f.*
 vote, *in senate or on jury,*
sententia, ae, f.; in elec-
tions, suffrāgium, gī, n.

W

wait, delay, moror, *1.*
 wait for, exspectō, *1.*
 wander about, vagor, *1.*
 war, bellum, *i, n.*
 warn, admoneō, ēre, uī, itus.
 watchfulness, cūra, *ae, f.*
 way, manner, modus, *i, m.*
 way, road, via, *ae, f.*
 we, nōs, nostrum (*i*).
 weak, dēbilis, *e.*
 weapon, tēlum, *i, n.*
 weather, tempestās, ātis, *f.*
 weep, lacrimō, *1.*

- weigh (*of anchor*), tollō, ere, sustulī, sublātus.
 weighty, gravis, e.
 welfare, salūs, ūtis, *f*.
 public welfare, rēs pūblica, reī pūblicae.
 well-disposed, studiōsus, a, um.
 what (*inter. pro.*), quid; (*inter. adj.*), quī, quae, quod.
 what (*rel. pro.*), (id) quod, (ea) quae.
 what great, how great, quantus, a, um.
 whatever, quidquid.
 what sort of, quālis, e.
 when, cum; ubi.
 where (*place in which*), ubi; (*place to which*), quō.
 wherever, whithersoever, quōcumque.
 whether, num, -ne, sī, utrum. §§ 27, 29.
 which, *see who*.
 which (*of two*), uter, utra, utrum.
 while, dum.
 who, what (*inter. pro.*), quis, quid.
 who, which, what (*rel. pro.*), quī, quae, quod.
 whoever, whatever, quicumque, quaecumque, quodcumque.
 whole, tōtus, a, um.
 wholly, omnīnō.
 why, cūr.
 wicked, improbus, a, um; perditus, a, um.
 wickedly, nefāriē.
 wide, lātus, a, um.
 width, lātitudō, inis, *f*.
 wife, uxor, ōris, *f*.
 wild beast, belua, ae, *f*.
 willing, be willing, volō, velle, voluī.
 winter, hiems, hiemis, *f*.
 pass the winter, hiemō, 1.
 winter quarters, hiberna, ōrum, *n*.
 wisdom, cōnsilium, lī, *n*.
 wish, volō, velle, voluī.
 not wish, nōlō, nolle, nōluī.
 with, cum, *prep. with abl*.
 with, near, apud, *prep. with acc*.
 withdraw, go away, discēdō, ere, cessī, cessūrus.
 without, sine, *prep. with abl*.
 withstand, sustineō, ēre, uī, tentus.
 woman, mulier, eris, *f*.
 word, verbum, ī, *n*.
 work (*noun*), opus, operis, *n*.
 work (*verb*), labōrō, 1; ēnītor, ī, nīsus or nīxus.
 worth, virtūs, ūtis, *f*.
 worth while, it is worth while, est tantī.
 worthless, levis, e.
 worthy, dignus, a, um.
 would that, utinam.
 wound, volnus, eris, *n*.
 write out, perscribō, ere, scripsī, scriptus.
 wrong, do wrong, peccō, 1.

Y

year, annus, ī, *m*.

every year, quotannis.

yesterday, hesternō, diē.

yet, tamen.

and yet, quamquam.

yield, cēdō, ere, cessī, cessus.

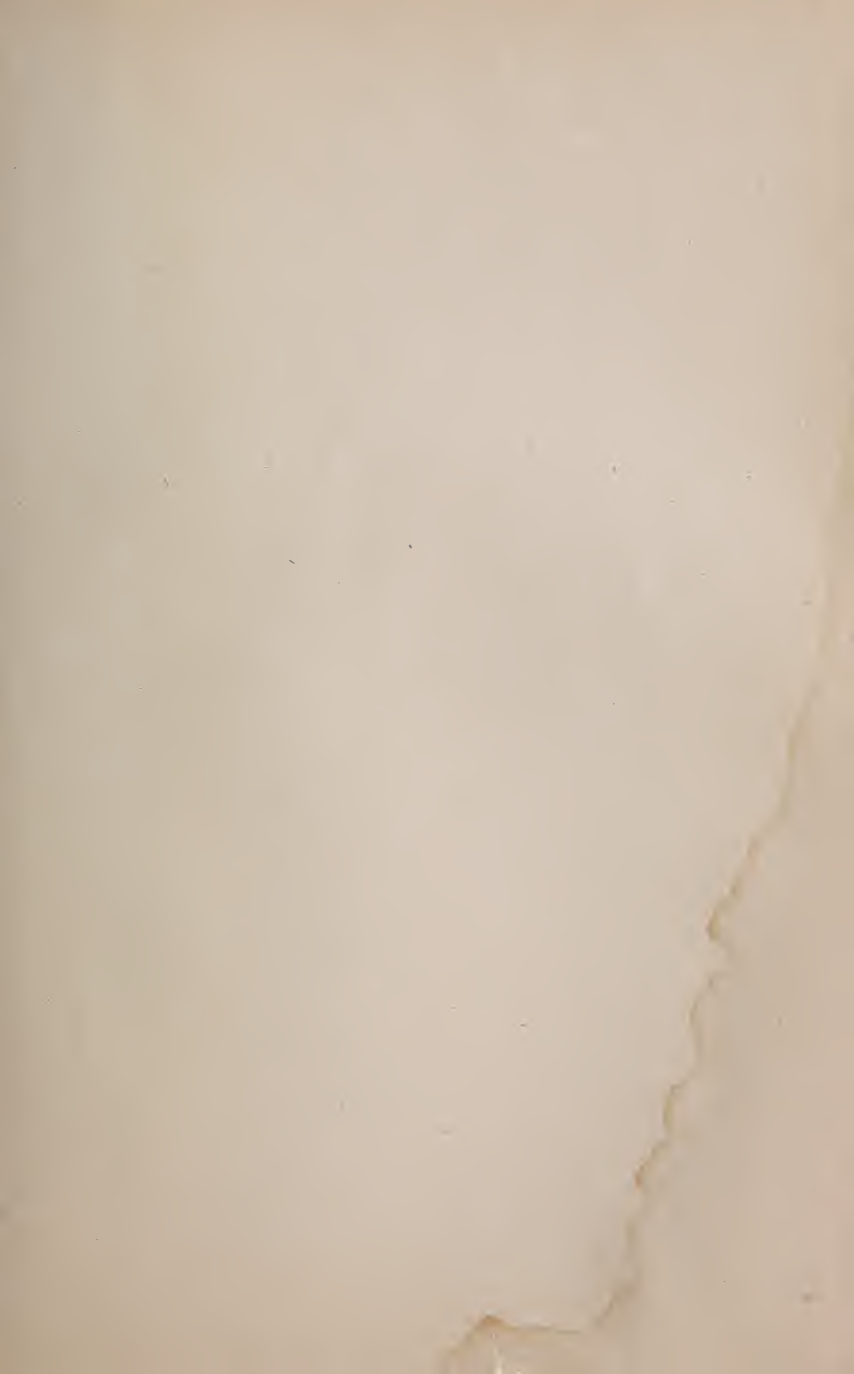
you, tū, tuī.

young man, adulēscēns, adulēscētis, *m*.

your (*sing.*), tuus, a, um ;
(*plu.*), vester, tra, trum.

Z

zeal, studium, dī, *n*.



AUG 28 1912







LIBRARY OF CONGRESS



0 003 039 960 2